Scaling of morphogenetic patterns in continuous and discrete models

THESIS SUBMITTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LIVERPOOL FOR THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

BY

MANAN’IARIVO LOUIS RASOLONJANAHARY

SEPTEMBER 2013
# Table of Contents

**General Introduction** ............................................................................................................... 5

**Chapter 1 Introduction** ............................................................................................................ 8

1.1 Patterns in non-biological systems ........................................................................................ 8

1.2 Biological patterns .................................................................................................................. 10

1.2.1 Skin patterns .................................................................................................................... 10

1.2.2 Shells of molluscs .......................................................................................................... 11

1.2.3 Segmentation of the fly embryo (Drosophila) ............................................................... 12

1.3 Mechanisms of pattern formation ....................................................................................... 14

1.4 Symmetry and symmetry breaking in biological pattern formation ................................. 16

1.5 Noise-induced pattern formations ..................................................................................... 17

1.6 Robustness and scaling of biological patterns .................................................................... 19

1.7 Mathematical models for pattern formation ....................................................................... 20

1.7.1 French Flag Model ....................................................................................................... 21

1.7.2 Morphogen gradient in system with decay ................................................................. 22

1.7.3 Turing’s Model ............................................................................................................. 23

1.7.4 Fitzhugh-Nagumo model ............................................................................................. 28

1.8 Robustness of morphogen gradients ................................................................................... 31

1.9 Scaling of morphogen gradient .......................................................................................... 33

1.9.1 Scaling in Annihilation model ..................................................................................... 35

1.9.2 Scaling in the expansion-repression model .................................................................. 37

1.10 Concentration dependent diffusion and scaling of morpho-gens gradients ..................... 39

**Chapter 2 Scaling in continuous model** ................................................................................. 41

2.1 Defining robustness factor ................................................................................................. 41

2.2 Defining scaling factor ...................................................................................................... 44
### 2.3 Scaling in one-variable model

- 2.3.1 Effect of $\lambda$ for Dirichlet boundary condition
- 2.3.2 Effect of $\lambda$ for Neumann boundary condition

### 2.4 Scaling of exponential profile (mechanism 1)

### 2.5 Scaling of exponential profile (mechanism 2)

### 2.6 Scaling of morphogen in annihilation model

### 2.7 Scaling of nuclear trapping model

### 2.8 Scaling in a system with active transport

### 2.9 Summary

### Chapter 3 Scaling of Turing patterns

- 3.1 Turing instability in the linear model
- 3.2 Turing instability in the model extended with cubic terms
- 3.3 Effect of the size of the medium on the number of stripes
- 3.4 Effect of the diffusion of the inhibitor on the number of stripes
- 3.5 Scaling of Turing patterns in the three-variable model
- 3.6 Fitzhugh-Nagumo model
- 3.7 Transition from oscillation to stripes
- 3.8 Three-variable FHN model
- 3.9 Summary

### Chapter 4 Discrete model

- 4.1 Technique of cellular automata
- 4.2 Chain of logical elements
- 4.3 Wolfram’s model
- 4.3.1 Effects of initial condition and noise in the patterning for two-state model
- 4.3.2 Formation of three-periodic stationary structures in the general cellular automata (two-state model)
- 4.3.3 General comment on periodic patterns in two-state model
General Introduction

In biological systems, individuals which belong to the same species can have different sizes. However, the ratios between the different parts of their bodies remain the same for individuals of different sizes. For example, for fully developed organism with segmented structure (i.e. insects), the number of segment across the size range of the individuals does not change. This morphological scaling plays a major role in the development of the organism and it has been the object of biological studies (Cooke 1981, Day and Lawrence 2000, Parker 2011) and mathematical modelling (Othmer and Pate 1980, Gregor, Tank et al. 2007, Kerszberg and Wolpert 2007) for many decades. Such scaling involves adjusting intrinsic scale of spatial patterns of gene expression that are set up during the development to the size of the system (Umulis and Othmer 2013). On the biological side, the evidence of scaling has been demonstrated experimentally on various objects including embryos. (Spemann 1938, Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005). For example, a *Xenopus* embryo was physically cut into dorsal and ventral halves in experimental conditions. The dorsal half which contains the “Spemann organizer” developed into a small embryo with normal proportion (Spemann 1938). Similar experiments have been carried out for the case of the sea urchin embryo which lead to a smaller size of individuals (Khaner 1993). Also for flies of different species, the number of stripes on their embryos during their development remains the same although they are of different sizes. These stripes, which are visible at an earlier stage of the embryonic development, correspond to the spatial pattern of gene expressions and are the origin of the segmented body of the flies (Jaeger, Surkova et al. 2004, Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005, Arias 2008). On the mathematical side, Turing introduced the term “morphogens” for protein which is a key factor for pattern formation and he derived a model involving morphogens in which spatial patterns arise under certain conditions. Since then, various mathematical models of pattern formations have been developed. For the diffusion-based models, the spatial patterns do not scale with size. For models using reaction-diffusion equations, (combination of diffusion and biochemical reactions) a characteristic length scale is determined by the diffusion constant and reaction rate. Thus, when the size of the embryo changes, the spacing of the patterning remains fixed. This means that solutions of mathematical models based on reaction-diffusion do not show scaling (Tomlin and Axelrod 2007).

The motivation of this work is to introduce possible mechanisms of scaling in biological
systems and demonstrate them using mathematical models. After a discussion on how the scaling is considered in a few continuous models, we introduce our definition of scaling. We apply our definition of scaling to analyse properties of concentration profiles arising in various continuous models. Upon analysis of these profiles we introduce modifications of mathematical models, in particular, two famous continuous models (Turing and Fitzhugh-Nagumo) to achieve scaling of their solutions.

Following a presentation of continuous models, a discrete model of pattern formation based on a chain of logical elements (cellular automata) is also presented. This is more appropriate to represent the discreteness of biological systems with respect to their scaling properties: for a number of problems the issue of scaling doesn’t appear in the discrete formulation. This model has been developed to take account of local interactions between cells resulting into stationary pattern formation.

We conclude this thesis by comparing our results with results obtained on other models and with experimental data particularly related to the different stages of the development of the fly embryo.

The thesis is structured as follows:

**Chapter 1** will discuss about the preliminary background. We will start with patterns in non-biological and biological systems. This is followed by how biological patterns were formed i.e. what mechanisms do we have for these pattern formations. Two of the main properties of biological patterns, which are robustness and scaling, will be briefly discussed in the next section. The mathematical aspects will follow with some examples of mathematical models. The final section will deal with a continuous model.

**Chapter 2** will concern the scaling of the continuous models. First, we begin with a simple one-variable model with a diffusion coefficient $D$ and a decay coefficient $k$. We shall investigate whether this model scales with the Dirichlet and Neumann boundary conditions. We consider two mechanisms of scaling of exponential profile. Then we consider scaling of the morphogen of the annihilation model. We consider the nuclear trapping model and active transport model.

**Chapter 3** will concern the two famous models: Turing model and Fitzhugh-Nagumo (FHN) model. For the Turing model, different variants with two variables have been considered. In
the variant with three variables, we compute the solution for all variables and then we calculate the scaling factor for one of them. For the FHN model, we start with the two variables. Then we move on to the three-variable FHN system. For this latter case, we have computed the scaling factor numerically.

Chapter 4 concerns the presentation of a discrete model based on cellular automaton. We consider the two-state model for which, we determine the transitions giving stationary patterns from an initial periodic solution. Then, we determine the transitions which give periodic stripes from initial random condition. Hereafter, we deal with three- or more states.
Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1 Patterns in non-biological systems

Patterns are defined as orders embedded in randomness or apparent regularities (Chuong and Richardson 2009). They can appear in various systems and in different forms.

Living nature is one of the domains very rich in patterns. For instance in animal world, the zebra coat marking consists of a series of black and white stripes. The giraffe’s neck has a spotted pattern. Some snakes have also a succession of multi colored ring along their body. Also, patterns can be found on some butterfly wings (Murray 2003). These are only a few examples but many more exist in animal world. Patterns can be found also in vegetal world. For instance, on a leaf, the veins exhibit a pattern along the midrib. On the fruit side, pattern is also shown on pineapple skin. Patterns can be seen as well on the flowers of sunflowers or white marguerite (Cowin 2000). Other examples can be found in vegetal world.

Non-living nature is also full of patterns. Patterns can be observed at the surface of bodies of water such as an ocean or a lake (see panel A in Figure 1-1). These patterns are linked to the transfer of energy from the blowing wind to the water (Hereman 2011). The size of the resulting wave (so the pattern) depends on the speed and the duration of the wind, and the fetch (length of the interaction area between the wind and the water) (Craik 2004). The
pattern can have a two dimensional form (succession of rising and failing of water level, for instance) (Rankine 1863, Bona, Colin et al. 2005). Steady three-dimensional patterns can exist as well at the surface of the water under certain conditions (constant density, irrational flow, inviscid fluid) (Bridges, Dias et al. 2001, Kerszberg and Wolpert 2007). In addition to the wind, a ship cruising at a constant speed on calm water can induce wave pattern known as the Kelvin wave pattern (Ohkusu and Iwashita 2004). Other forms of patterns exist at the surface of water.

For sand, the patterns have the appearance of ripples which can have wavelengths in the range of few centimetres to tens of meters and amplitudes from a few millimetres to a maximum of a few centimetres (Plater 1991, Hesp 1997). They can be observed in desert sand. The sand patterns are believed to be the result of the action of the wind on loose sand (Ball 2001). When the wind strength is large enough, the shear stress exerted by the wind on the sand surface lifts individual sand particles (Nishimori and Ouchi 1993). During their flight, the particles have approximately the velocity of the wind. During their impact with the sand surface, other sand particles are ejected (Sharp 1963, Walker 1981). For sufficiently large wind velocities, a cascade process happens, and an entire population of saltating particles hopping on the sand surface emerges (Tsoar 1994). During strong winds, the layer of saltating particles can reach a thickness of more than 1 m (Ungar and Haff 1987, Livingstone, Wiggs et al. 2007). Sand ripple patterns can be found under water as well. For this case, the role of wind is played by the water (Yizhaq, J. Balmforth et al. 2004).

Apart from nature, patterns can be encountered in other domains as well. Chemical system is one of them where the famous Belousov-Zhabontisky reaction is an example (Hoyle 2006). Belousov discovered, back in the 1950s, that some chemical reactions containing acid solution and bromate with the presence of a catalyst show a periodic change in concentration of species (Pechenkin 2009). This change of concentration is translated to a change of coloration. For example, in the reaction between Cerium-catalysed Bromate and Malonic acid, the ratio of concentration of the cerium(IV) and cerium(III) ions oscillated, causing the color of the solution to oscillate between a yellow solution and a colorless solution (Zaikin and Zhabotinsky 1970, Field, Koros et al. 1972).
In fluid flow domain, the flow past a cylinder in two-dimensional domain exhibits a pattern which form depends on the Reynolds number. The Reynolds number is defined as the ratio of the product of the cylinder diameter and the undisturbed free-stream velocity flow and the viscosity of the fluid. When the free stream velocity is increased, a succession of vortices propagates away behind the cylinder (Van Dyke 1982). The flow past a cylinder is one of the most studied in aerodynamics and has many engineering applications, (see Figure 1-2).

Figure 1-2: Flows past a circular cylinder.
A: Birth of vortices behind the cylinder for a Reynolds number of 2000. B: Two parallel rows of staggered vortices for Reynolds number of 150 (Van Dyke 1982).

1.2 Biological patterns

Biology is one of the domains rich in patterns and where the research on patterns has been done extensively. For biological systems, patterns exist in a wide range of size (from embryo to individual). They have emerged in the origin of life and its evolution (Hazen 2009). In this part, we deal with more details with some of these domains.

1.2.1 Skin patterns

Skin patterns have various appearances. Some examples are: stripes for zebras and tigers, spots for leopards (Murray 1988), patches for giraffes and rings for snakes (Murray and Myerscough 1991, Allen, Baddeley et al. 2013). Some pictures extracted from various internet sites are shown in Figure 1-3. For zebra, for instance, the hair pattern is considered as black stripes on a white background (the belly and unstriped leg regions are white). The width of these stripes varies, being wide on the neck and narrow on the head. The patterns may differ from a zebra to another or from zebra specie to another. These different zebra
patterns are shown to be generated by a single mechanism forming stripes, operating at different times in embryogenesis (Bard 1977). Turing has proposed a possible mechanism explaining how animals get their skin patterns (Turing 1952).

\[Figure\ 1-3:\ Examples\ of\ animal\ skin\ patterns.\ \ A: \ Black\ and\ white\ stripes\ for\ the\ zebra.\ \ B: \ Spots\ for\ leopard.\ \ C: \ The\ giraffe\ has\ patches.\ \ D: \ The\ snake\ has\ periodic\ patterns\ (orange\ and\ grey).\]

1.2.2 Shells of molluscs

The mollusc shell exhibits one of the more complicated patterns in higher organisms. The patterns on mollusc shell are interesting in two aspects: pigmentation and relief. These two aspects co-exist simultaneously (Boettiger, Ermentrout et al. 2009). Moreover, two molluscs of the same species can have different shell patterns, and two molluscs from different species can have similar shell patterns. The patterns consist of lines, stripes and patches of different pigmentations or of relief-like structures (ridges, knobs) (Waddington and Cowe 1969). The relief-like patterns are believed to have a functional significance (for instance, used to increase friction with sand during burrowing). Therefore, the environment has an effect on relief-like patterns. The shell pattern is formed only on the growing edge of the mollusc shell and therefore, it represents a protocol of what is happened at the growing edge of the particular animal. The patterns are, therefore, space and time plots. More details of mollusc
shell patterns are given in (Meinhardt and Klingler 1987). Figure 1-4 shows an example of shells with patterns.

![Shell patterns](image)

*Figure 1-4: Stripes due to shell pigmentation occur at regular basis.*
*Upper: Stripes are parallel to the axis of the shell.*
*Lower: Stripes perpendicular to the axis of shell (Meinhardt 2009).*

### 1.2.3 Segmentation of the fly embryo (Drosophila)

Drosophila embryo is one of the most studied systems for patterning (Hake and Wilt 2003). The Drosophila embryo has two directions of patterning: first, along the head to tail (antero-posterior) axis where the pattern occurs as a repeated structure called segments and second, along the dorsal-ventral axis. These axes are laid down in the egg. For the head to tail pattern, the segments have their origin in spatially periodic patterns of gene expressions which are visible at early stages of embryonic development (St Johnston and Nusslein-Volhard 1992). The patterning in Drosophila embryo is controlled by gradients in the concentration of **maternal genes** (bicoid, caudal, etc.) that arise soon after fertilisation (Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005). These genes located on the poles of the embryo, diffuse spatially from the anterior (bicoid) and posterior (nanos) poles of the embryo and control the spatial pattern of the transcription of the **gap genes** (i.e. hunchback, Krüppel, knirps, etc.)(Tsai and Gergen 1994). These genes are amongst the earliest expressed zygotic genes and they encode transcription factors. They act to sub-divide the embryo into broad domains (anterior, middle and posterior). The **gap genes** regulate each other and the next set of genes in the hierarchy which are the **pair-rule genes** (even-skipped, hairy, fushi-tarazu, etc.)(Jackle, Tautz et al. 1986). **Pair-rule genes** are expressed in 7 stripes of cell and establish the initial expression of
**segment-polarity genes** (wingless, hedgehog, engrailed) (Jack, Regulski et al. 1988, Small and Levine 1991). **Segment polarity genes**, in turn, are expressed in 14 narrow stripes shortly before gastrulation. These stripes constitute a segmental pre-pattern in that they determine the positions of morphological segment boundaries which form later in development (see Figure 1-5) (Perrimon and Mahowald 1987). The position and identity of body segments which takes places during the embryogenesis are specified in the segmentation process (Jaeger 2009).

![Figure 1-5: Hierarchy of Gene Control of Segmentation in Drosophila.](image)

The patterning associated with the segmentation takes place in four levels: Concentration profiles of **maternity genes** (bicoid, caudal, etc). These genes control the spatial patterns of transcription of the gap genes. Spatial patterns of transcription of the **gap genes** (Hb, Kr, etc). The **gap genes** regulate each other and the next set of genes in the hierarchy, the **pair-rule genes** (even-skipped, hairy, etc.). **Pair-rule genes** - form seven stripes of transcription around each embryo. **Pair-rule genes** determine the initial expression of segment polarity genes. **Segment polarity genes** - form fourteen stripes of transcription around each embryo (Jaeger 2009).

For the dorsal-ventral axis, the patterning of the Drosophila dorsal-ventral axis is controlled by the gradient of Dorsal protein is highest in ventral regions of the embryo (Lynch and Roth 2011). Dorsal protein activates genes in a concentration dependent manner to establish early patterning of the embryo. The patterns are refined by interactions between Dorsal and other activators as well as repressors in both dorsal and ventral regions of the embryo (Flores-saib...
and Courey 2000, Lin and Steward 2001). In the early embryo, the translocation of dorsal protein into ventral nuclei produces a gradient where the ventral cells with the most Dorsal protein become mesoderm (Umulis, O'Connor et al. 2008). The next higher portion becomes the neurogenic ectoderm. This is followed by the lateral and dorsal ectoderm (Francois, Solloway et al. 1994, Reeves, Trisnadi et al. 2012). The dorsalmost region becomes the amnioserosa (embryonic layer surrounding the embryo)(see Figure 1-6) (Gilbert 2010).

**Figure 1-6: Dorso-ventral regions of early embryo.**
*In the early embryo, five distinct regions, which are mesoderm, ventral ectoderm, lateral and dorsal ectoderm and amnioserosa appear. Left: Lateral view. Right: Transversal view (Gilbert 2010).*

### 1.3 Mechanisms of pattern formation

Pattern formation is a central process in the development of living organisms. According to Wolpert, it is the process by which spatial organization of cells is established and is related to two other developmental processes which are cell differentiation and change in form (Wolpert 1969). For instance, pattern formation determines where cartilage and muscle will develop on the development of vertebrate limb (Wolpert 1994). The role of pattern formation in the development process in biology can be explained using the concept of positional information. The basic idea behind this concept is that cells acquire positional identities as in coordinate system and then interpret their positions to give rise to spatial patterns. One of the main mechanisms for setting up positional information is based on gradients of morphogens, which are diffusible molecules produced by the cells, whose concentration specifies positions (Wolpert 2011). If the concentration of the morphogen is fixed at the source, then the
distribution of its concentration at any point effectively provides the cells with positional information (Wolpert 1994).

Mechanisms of pattern formation have been classified into three categories (Salazar-Ciudad, Jernvall et al. 2003, Forgacs and Newman. 2005):

- autonomous mechanism in which cells enter into specific arrangements (patterns) without interaction,
- inductive mechanisms where cells interact with each other by secreting diffusible molecules. This leads to change in pattern by reciprocal or hierarchical alteration of cell phenotypes, and
- morphogenetic mechanisms where pattern changes by means of cell interactions that do not change cell states.

In theoretical discussion of biological development, it is commonly accepted that pattern formation has two components (Wilkins 2001). First, interaction mechanisms between cells with different states and different spatial relationships using signaling in two and three dimensions. Second, mechanisms that use cell behaviors other than signaling and action previously established pattern to cause the formation of three dimensional tissues and organs.

However the morphogen gradients are typically dynamic and in many cases their dynamics are conditioned by the movement of cells. Gastrulation in the chick embryo is a good example for which detailed data on the dynamics of gene expression patterns and cell movement is available (Bachvarova 1999, Stern 2004, Chuai and Weijer 2009). An extensive cell motion observed during gastrulation all over the epiblast can be considered as having three distinct parts: (1) cell motion along the embryo midline associated with progression and regression of the primitive streak; (2) lateral movement of cells on both sides of the midline which is vortex-shaped at early gastrulation and form lateral flows toward the midline at later stages and (3) transformation of approaching the midline epithelial cells into mesenchyme which forms a sink in the epiblast along its midline and gives rise to lateral flows formed my mesenchyme cells. As the movement involves different cell groups which express different genes the forming morphogenetic patterns are dynamic and change following the relocation of domains of transcriptions. Furthermore, the movement of cells can, in turn, be affected by morphogen concentrations, which is the case if the movement is chemotactic and
morphogens can act as chemotactic agents. These possibilities have recently been explored in studies combining mathematical modelling and experiments (Vasiev, Balter et al. 2010, Harrison, del Corral et al. 2011, Vasieva, Rasolonjanahary et al. 2013).

1.4 Symmetry and symmetry breaking in biological pattern formation

Mathematically, symmetry is characterised by a group of transformations that leave certain features of a system unchanged (Mainzer 2005). This can be the invariance of the number of stripes on a fly embryo when the embryo size increases. In physical systems, symmetry can be seen as homogeneity (Golubitsky, Langford et al. 2003) or uniformity (Li and Bowerman 2010). It can be also characterised by the existence of different viewpoints from which the system appears the same (Anderson 1972). Also, the symmetry properties may be attributed to physical law (equations) or to physical objects or states (solutions) (Castellani 2002). Symmetry plays fundamental role in physics, for instance, in classical mechanics or quantum mechanics (Gross 1996).

Symmetry is a very important ingredient in a pattern formation model (spatial hidden symmetries in pattern formation). The application of the concept of symmetry has been extended by Turing in biology. In his famous paper in 1952 (Turing 1952), Turing showed that, in biology, pattern formation is governed by reaction-diffusion systems involving two chemical substances called morphogens. A spatially homogeneous distribution of these morphogens is unstable if one of them (activator) diffuses more slowly than the other (inhibitor). In this case, small stochastic concentration fluctuations are amplified, leading to a chemical instability (a “Turing instability”) and the formation of concentration gradients (or patterns) (Van der Gucht and Sykes 2009). These reaction-diffusion systems often possess symmetries. Specifically, the equations which describe them are often left unchanged by certain groups of transformations, such as reflection, translation or rotation.

The process by which the spatially homogeneous distribution is broken to generate a more structured state is called symmetry breaking. For the presence of such structure, a lower symmetry than the absolute one is needed: in the sense that symmetry breaking is essential for the existence of structured things (Castellani 2002).
Symmetry breaking does not imply that no symmetry is present, but rather that the situation is characterized by a lower symmetry than the original one. It refers to the situation in which solutions to the equations have less symmetry than the equations themselves. There are two types of symmetry breaking: spontaneous and explicit (Castellani 2002, Nogueira 2006, Li and Bowerman 2010). Spontaneous symmetry-breaking occurs when the laws or equations of a system are symmetrical but specific solutions do not respect the same symmetry. Here, spontaneous simply means endogenous to the dynamics of the system and not catalyzed by some exogenous input as in the case of explicit symmetry breaking. Explicit symmetry breaking means a situation where the dynamical equations are not invaritant under the symmetry group (Castellani 2002). It occurs when the rules governing a system are not manifestly invariant under the symmetry group considered. Also, in this case, the symmetry is broken by external objects.

1.5 Noise-induced pattern formations

Random fluctuations due to environmental effects are always present in natural systems. In addition to deterministic events which lead to pattern formation, these random fluctuations can also generate patterns. These pattern formations are explained as noise induced in the sense that they emerge as a consequence of the randomness of the system’s fluctuations. If the noise intensity is set to zero, the noise-induced patterns disappear and the homogeneous stable state is restored. These random drivers have often been related to a symmetry-breaking instability (Scarsoglio, Laio et al. 2011). They destabilise a homogenous (and, thus, symmetric) state of the system and determine a transition to an ordered phase, which exhibits a degree of spatial organisation.

In mathematical modelling of noise induced pattern formation, Gaussian white noise is usually adopted as it provides a reasonable representation of the random fluctuation of the real systems (the spatial and temporal scales of the Gaussian white noise are much shorter than the characteristic scales over which spatio-temporal dynamics of the field variable are evolving). At any point \( r(x, y) \) of the system, the spatio-temporal dynamics of the state variable described by the following equation (Scarsoglio, Laio et al. 2011)

\[
\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} = f(\phi) + g(\phi)\xi(r,t) + D L[\phi] + \xi_n(r,t).
\]
This equation contains three components.

- The deterministic local dynamics \( f(\phi) \) which tends to drive the field variable to a uniform steady state hence do not contribute to pattern formation,

- the noise components which consist of is the multiplicative part \( g(\phi)\xi(r, \phi) \) and the additive part \( \xi_a(r, \phi) \) which maintain the dynamics away from the uniform steady state, and

- the spatial coupling term represented by \( DL[\phi] \) and which provides spatial coherence. This spatial coupling is characterized by the operator \( L \) and its strength \( D \).

Gaussian white noise with intensity \( s \) and zero mean is usually adopted as it provides a reasonable representation of the random fluctuation of the real systems (the spatial and temporal scales of the Gaussian white noise are much shorter than the characteristic scales over which spatio-temporal dynamics of the field variable are evolving) (Scarsoglio, Laio et al. 2011). For this Gaussian white noise, the correlation is given by

\[
\langle \xi(r,t)\xi(r',t') \rangle = 2s\delta(r-r')\delta(t-t').
\]

**Additive noise**

In the case of additive noise, the model is represented by

\[
\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial t} = a\phi + DL[\phi] + \xi_a(r,t).
\]

The noise effect does not depend of the state of the system. The deterministic part of the dynamics does not generate patterns for any value of \( a \): if \( a < 0 \) the system is damped to zero without showing any spatial coherence, if \( a \) is positive, no steady states exist and the dynamics of \( \phi \) diverge without displaying any ordered spatial structures. Additive noise, \( \xi_a \), is able to keep the dynamics away from the homogenous deterministic steady state even though in the underlying deterministic dynamics \( f(\phi) \) would tend to cause the convergence to the homogenous state. In these conditions patterns emerge and are continuously sustained by noise. These patterns are noise-induced in that they disappear and the homogeneous stable state \( \phi_0 \) is restored if the noise intensity is set to zero (Scarsoglio, Laio et al. 2011).
Multiplicative noise

For this case, the model is represented by

$$\frac{\partial \varphi}{\partial t} = f(\varphi) + g(\varphi)\xi(r,t) + DL[\varphi].$$

In the case of multiplicative noise the evolution depends on the value of the state variable $\varphi$. The cooperation between multiplicative noise and spatial coupling is based on two key actions: (i) the multiplicative random component temporarily destabilizes the homogeneous stable state, $\varphi_0$, of the underlying deterministic dynamics, and (ii) the spatial coupling acts during this instability, thereby generating and stabilizing a pattern (Scarsoglio, Laio et al. 2011). The key features of pattern formation induced by multiplicative noise are that for $s$ lower than a critical value $s_c$ the state variable $\varphi$ experiences fluctuation about $\varphi_0$, but noise does not play any constructive role (Sanjuán 2012). For $s$ greater than $s_c$, the spatial coupling exploits the initial instability of the system to generate ordered structures.

1.6 Robustness and scaling of biological patterns

In biology, pattern formation results from the response of individual cells to a spatial pattern (gradient) of chemical substances called morphogens (Turing 1952). According to Turing, morphogens are responsible for the main phenomena of morphogenesis (generation of form) (Turing 1952). One of the key properties of morphogen gradients is “robustness” (Lander, Wan et al., Umulis, O’Connor et al. 2008). The term “robustness” quantifies the aptitude of the morphogen gradients (patterns) to resist to the fluctuations due to internal and external factors (Lander, Wan et al. 2005). During its development the organ, composed of cells, is exposed to a certain “development noise” i.e. environmental factor, genetic variability and random difference, which can lead to variation in gene expression level between individual (He, Wen et al. 2008). Despite these fluctuations, the outcome of the organ is precise and reproducible, indicating that the mechanisms regulating patterning and growth of organs are robust and able to damp the effects of the variations (Schwank and Basler 2010).
Figure 1-7: Scalings of fly embryo and sea urchin. 

A: Fly embryo of different sizes with the same number of stripes (segments). The upper and lower fly embryo have 485 µm and 344 µm respectively. Scaling was obtained by varying the lifetime of the Bicoid protein (Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005). B: At the two-cell stage, one has the development of the sea urchin. Hans Driesch separated into two cells resulting that one cell is dead and the other has given rise to a smaller sea urchin (Wolpert, Beddington et al. 1998).

The second key property of morphogen gradients is scaling. In Drosophila, development along the anterior-posterior axis is scaled with embryo length i.e. although individuals vary substantially in size, the proportions of different parts of the individuals remain the same, (see Figure 1-7)(Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005, Barkai and Ben-Zvi 2009). This adaptation of proportion (pattern) with size is termed as scaling. Experiments in scaling have been carried out towards the end of 19th century. In 1883, Whilhem Roux killed one of two cells in a frog embryo and he found put that the rest gave rise to only part of the embryo (Sander 1997). Hans Driesch, in 1891, two cells of the sea urchin and each gave rise to full embryos (see Figure 1-7)(Kearl 2012). Four years later, Thomas Morgan repeated Roux’s experiment by removing one of two blastomere in a frog embryo and he found out that the amphibian could give rise a complete embryo from half an egg (Wolpert, Meyerowitz et al. 2001, Beetschen and Fischer 2004, De Robertis 2006).

1.7 Mathematical models for pattern formation

Various mathematical models have been developed to help understand pattern formation. The first of these models was introduced by Turing and based on reaction-diffusion equations of substances called morphogens. According to Turing, morphogens are substances which react chemically and diffuse through a tissue (Turing 1952). These morphogens are, through their gradient, responsible for pattern formation in biological system.
1.7.1 French Flag Model

The classical illustration of how a morphogen can provide positional information is given by the French Flag Model suggested by Lewis Wolpert (Wolpert 1969). This model demonstrates how a simple linear concentration profile of a morphogen can set domains of cellular determination in an otherwise homogeneous tissue. The linear concentration profiles can form naturally in various settings. The simplest case is when the production and degradation of morphogen takes place outside the tissue on its opposing sides and the morphogen passively diffuses along the tissue from the side where it is produced to the side where it is degraded. Mathematically, the concentration of the morphogen in this system should obey the so-called Laplace’s equation with Dirichlet boundary conditions, which for a tissue represented by a one-dimensional domain of length $L$ is given by the following mathematical formulation (Vasieva, Rasolonjanahary et al. 2013) (see Figure 1-8).

In this model, $C$ represents the concentration of the morphogen, $D$ is the diffusion coefficient and $C_1$ and $C_2$ are the buffered concentrations of the morphogen outside the two sides of the tissue. For this model, the pattern depends on the level of concentration. This model does scale because if, for example, the size of tissue is doubled then the size of all domains of cellular determination which are defined by the threshold concentration values $T_1$ and $T_2$ will be also doubled.

![Figure 1-8: Linear gradient in the French Flag model forms due to passive diffusion of the morphogen.](image)

$x_1$ and $x_2$ have $T_1$ and $T_2$ for the threshold concentration values respectively. $C$ is the concentration of morphogen, $D$ is the diffusion coefficient, $C_1$ and $C_2$ are the concentrations of the morphogen outside the two sides of the tissue and $L$ is the size of the tissue. We have Dirichlet boundary condition at both ends.
1.7.2 Morphogen gradient in system with decay

The linear shape shown in the French flag model, in the previous section, is not confirmed by experimental observations. Most commonly measurements point to an exponential shape, as, for example, in the case of the transcriptional factor Bicoid in the fly embryo (Driever and Nusslein-Volhard 1988, Gregor, Wieschaus et al. 2007). Formation of the exponential profile can be shown mathematically under the assumption that the morphogen not only diffuses but also degrades inside the domain. The concentration of morphogen can be buffered on the boundaries of the tissue. Alternatively, we can assume that the tissue is isolated (no flows on the boundaries) and the production of the morphogen takes place in a restricted area inside the domain. These assumptions are perfectly reasonable for many studied objects. For example, the maternal Bicoid mRNA in fly embryo is localised in a small region on its apical side and the Bicoid protein produced in this region diffusively spreads and decays along the entire embryo. Stationary concentration of the morphogen in this system will satisfy the following equation (Vasieva, Rasolonjanahary et al. 2013)(Figure 1-9).

In this model, $C$ and $D$ have the same signification as previously, $k$ represents the decay rate and $p$ is the production of the protein in the apical side region of size $a$. When the area of the production is small, we can replace it by a boundary flux at $x=0$ (see proof in Appendix A). This figure does not scale because of the characteristic length of exponential profile. In other words, the distance required for the concentration to reduce by a certain factor (i.e. $e$-times), depends only on the diffusion coefficient, $D$, and the degradation rate, $k$, of the morphogen. For example, for the case shown in Figure 1-9, if we increase the size of the domain from $L$ to $2L$ then the sizes of blue and white sub-domains will not change while the red sub-domain will increase to cover all added $L$ units of length (Vasieva, Rasolonjanahary et al. 2013).

In an attempt to understand pattern formation in more depth, quantitative models of gradient formation have been developed. The addition of a degradation term with rate $k$ to the Fick’s second law leads to the equation

$$\frac{\partial C}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 C}{\partial x^2} - kC.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1-1)
Figure 1-9: Exponential profile forms when the diffusion is combined with the decay. C is the concentration of morphogen, D is the diffusion coefficient, $x_1$ and $x_2$ have $T_1$ and $T_2$ for the threshold concentration values respectively and $C_0$ is the concentration at $x=0$. We have production in the region between 0 and a with parameter $p$ in the equation. And we have Neumann boundary condition at both ends.

The steady state solution to this equation (1-1) with a production from localised source has an exponential form

$$C(x) = C_0 e^{-\frac{x}{\lambda}},$$  \hspace{1cm} (1-2)

where $C_0$, in equation (1-2), is the concentration at the source boundary ($x=0$) and $\lambda$ is the decay length given by $\lambda=(D/k)^{1/2}$, i.e., the distance from source at which the concentration is reduced to a fraction $1/e$ of $C_0$. $C_0$ depends on the flux of molecules across the source boundary $j_0$, on the diffusion coefficient $D$ and the degradation rate $k$ as shown in (1-3) (Wartlick, Kicheva et al. 2009).

$$C_0 = \frac{j_0}{\sqrt{Dk}}.$$ \hspace{1cm} (1-3)

1.7.3 Turing’s Model

Turing was the first to propose reaction diffusion theory involving two species (morphogens) as model for pattern formation. He suggested that chemicals can react and diffuse in such a way as to produce steady state heterogeneous spatial patterns of chemical or morphogen
concentration (Turing 1952). His theory is based on the possibility of a stable state against perturbation with absence of diffusion phenomenon to become unstable against perturbation in the presence of diffusion.

Turing’s pattern formation can be summarised as follows using two morphogen species, \( u \) and \( v \). The morphogen \( u \) is known as the activator because it is involved in the increase of its own production as well as to the production of the second morphogen \( v \). The second morphogen \( v \) is called the inhibitor since it reduces the production rate of the activator and it also enforces its own degradation. For a 2D system \((u, v)\), it is characterised by the set of ordinary differential equations.

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{du}{dt} &= f(u,v) \\
\frac{dv}{dt} &= g(u,v),
\end{align*}
\]

(1-4)

where \( f(u, v) \) and \( g(u, v) \) are non-linear functions. The equilibrium point \((u_0, v_0)\) is solution of the \( \text{LHS}=0 \) of (1-4). By adding a simple exponential type perturbation \( \bar{u}, \bar{v} \propto e^{\lambda t} \) to \((u_0, v_0)\), we will find \( \lambda \) from the characteristic equation

\[
\begin{vmatrix}
 f_u - \lambda & f_v \\
 g_u & g_v - \lambda
\end{vmatrix} = 0,
\]

where \( f_u, f_v, g_u \) and \( g_v \) are the derivatives with respect to \( u \) and \( v \) computed at \((u_0, v_0)\). This gives

\[
\lambda^2 - \lambda (f_u + g_v) + f_u g_v - f_v g_u = 0.
\]

From above, we have

\[
\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{f_u + g_v}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_u + g_v}{2}\right)^2 - \left(f_u g_v - f_v g_u\right)},
\]

In order to have stability, we need to request that \( \text{Re } \lambda < 0 \). From the properties of the roots of quadratic equations, we have the following conditions

\[
f_u + g_v < 0, \quad (1-5)
\]
and

\[ f_u g_v - f_v g_u > 0. \tag{1-6} \]

In the presence of diffusion phenomena, the set of previous ordinary differential equations (1-4) becomes.

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= D_u \Delta u + f(u, v) \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= D_v \Delta v + g(u, v),
\end{align*}
\tag{1-7}
\]

with \(D_u\) and \(D_v\) are the diffusion coefficients for \(u\) and \(v\) respectively. The equilibrium point \((u, v) = (u_0, v_0)\) is solution of the LHS=0 of (1-7). To study the effect of small perturbation let

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{u} &= u - u_0 \\
\tilde{v} &= v - v_0.
\end{align*}
\]

Linearising around \((u_0, v_0)\), we get

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial \tilde{u}}{\partial t} &= D_u \Delta \tilde{u} + u \tilde{f}_u + \tilde{v} \tilde{f}_v \\
\frac{\partial \tilde{v}}{\partial t} &= D_v \Delta \tilde{v} + u \tilde{g}_u + \tilde{v} \tilde{g}_v,
\end{align*}
\tag{1-8}
\]

where \(f_u, f_v, g_u\) and \(g_v\) are the derivatives with respect to \(u\) and \(v\) computed at \((u_0, v_0)\). We are looking for solutions which can be represented as

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{u} &= \sum_i \alpha_i e^{\lambda_i x} f_i(x) \\
\tilde{v} &= \sum_i \beta_i e^{\lambda_i x} g_i(x),
\end{align*}
\]

where \(\alpha_i\) and \(\beta_i\) are constants. Now the functions \(f_i(x)\) and \(g_i(x)\) can be represented as

\[
f_i(x) = g_i(x) = a_i \cos(k_i x) + b_i \sin(k_i x),
\]

where \(a_i\) and \(b_i\) are constants and \(k_i\) represents the wavelength. Assume that we have a function which goes from 0 to \(L\) and we want to extend it \textbf{evenly} i.e the function is symmetric.
with respect the vertical axis. Then, in the solutions of \( f_i(x) \) and \( g_i(x) \), all the \( \sin \) functions will vanish. Therefore the functions \( f_i(x) \) and \( g_i(x) \) can be written as

\[
f_i(x) = g_i(x) = a_i \cos(k_1 x),
\]

and the full solutions of \( \tilde{u} \) and \( \tilde{\nu} \) can be represented as

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{u} &= \sum_i \alpha_i e^{i \lambda_i} \cos\left(\frac{\pi i}{L} x\right) \\
\tilde{\nu} &= \sum_i \beta_i e^{i \lambda_i} \cos\left(\frac{\pi i}{L} x\right).
\end{align*}
\]

Any initial concentration profiles for both variables can be represented by above series. These series would represent solution of the system (1-8) if each pair of corresponding terms also satisfies this system. Therefore we take one particular term from each of the above series

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{u} &= \alpha_1 \cos(k x) e^{i \lambda t} \\
\tilde{\nu} &= \alpha_2 \cos(k x) e^{i \lambda t},
\end{align*}
\]

and substitute them into equation (1-8), we obtain

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha_1 \lambda &= -k^2 D_u \alpha_1 + f_u \alpha_1 + f_v \alpha_2 \\
\alpha_2 \lambda &= -k^2 D_v \alpha_2 + g_u \alpha_1 + g_v \alpha_2.
\end{align*}
\]

The above equations are linear in \( \alpha_1 \) and \( \alpha_2 \). Non-zero solutions only exist if the determinant of the matrix \( M \) is zero:

\[
\begin{vmatrix}
f_u - \lambda - k^2 D_u & f_v \\ g_u & g_v - \lambda - k^2 D_v
\end{vmatrix} = 0.
\]

This gives a quadratic equation in \( \lambda \).

\[
\lambda^2 - \lambda \left(f_u + g_v - k^2 \left(D_u + D_v\right)\right) + \left(k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 \left(f_u D_v + g_v D_u\right) + f_u g_v - f_v g_u\right) = 0. \tag{1-9}
\]

In order to investigate how diffusion phenomenon \((D_u, D_v \neq 0)\) can destabilize the system, let’s consider the coefficient of \( \lambda \) and the constant term in (1-9). They are functions of \( k^2 \) and denoted respectively as \( B(k^2) \) and \( C(k^2) \).
\[ B(k^2) = f_u + g_v - k^2(D_u + D_v), \quad (1-10) \]

and

\[ C(k^2) = k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 (f_u D_v + g_v D_u) + f_u g_v - f_v g_u, \quad (1-11) \]

**Figure 1-10: Plot of \( C(k^2) \) vs \( k^2 \).**

The condition (1-12) is satisfied for the blue curve but not satisfied for the green and red ones. The blue curve intersects the \( k^2 \) axis at \( k_1^2 \) and \( k_2^2 \). The instability occurs for \( k^2 \) between \( k_1^2 \) and \( k_2^2 \) i.e. one of the eigenvalues is positive. For the red and green curves, no Turing's patterns occur (Murray 2003).

The function \( B(k^2) \) is always negative for any value of \( k^2 \) according to (1-5). So, the only way to have instability is that the function \( C(k^2) \) is negative. To achieve that, we require that \( f_u D_v + g_v D_u > 0 \). This is necessary but not sufficient condition. A sufficient condition is to have the minimum of \( C(k^2) \) to be negative. The value of \( k^2 \) which gives this minimum value, \( C_{\min} \), is solution of the derivative of \( C(k^2) \) with respect to \( k^2 \) i.e.

\[ 2k^2 D_u D_v - (f_u D_v + g_v D_u) = 0. \]

So the sufficient condition to get instability is

\[ C_{\min} = \frac{(f_u D_v + g_v D_u)^2}{4D_u D_v} - \frac{(f_u D_v + g_v D_u)^2}{2D_u D_v} + f_u g_v - f_v g_u < 0. \]

After rearranging, we obtain
In other words, this condition leads to one of the eigenvalues to be positive.

The range of $k^2$ which corresponds to Turing’s instability is given by $k_1^2 < k^2 < k_2^2$ where $k_1^2$ and $k_2^2$ are zeros of $C(k^2)$. Their expressions are given by

$$k_{1,2}^2 = \frac{f_u D_v + g_v D_u}{4D_u D_v} \pm \frac{\sqrt{(f_u D_v + g_v D_u)^2 - 4D_u D_v (f_u g_v - f_v g_u)}}{2D_u D_v}. $$

This case corresponding to the instability is represented by the blue curve in Figure 1-10.

The values $k_1$ and $k_2$ are called the boundary wavenumbers. If $k<k_1$ or $k>k_2$ the perturbation due to the diffusion dies out without disturbing the homogeneous stable stationary state. The instability means that any noise with the right wavelength will be amplified by the system and leads to a spatial pattern with the matching wavelength. Turing’s instability (pattern) exists not only in biological systems but in domains as well as chemicals, physics, etc.

In summary, the conditions to get the homogeneous stable stationary state to become instable with the presence of diffusion (diffusion driven instability) are as follows:

$$\begin{cases} 
  f_u + g_v < 0 \\
  f_u g_v - f_v g_u > 0 \\
  f_u D_v + g_v D_u > 2(D_u D_v (f_u g_v - f_v g_u))^{1/2}. 
\end{cases}$$

The special wavelength of the Turing pattern is defined by the diffusion and kinetics rates of morphogens in equation (1-7). Neither of these two change when the size of the medium and therefore the patterns forming in the classical Turing model don’t scale.

### 1.7.4 Fitzhugh-Nagumo model

The Fitzhugh-Nagumo model (FHN) belongs to a general class of reaction-diffusion equations (Dikansky 2005). This model has different variants and was originally developed as a generic model for signal propagation along a nerve fibre (FitzHugh 1961). Its variant which introduces the diffusion of the second variable also serves as a generic model for
morphogenetic pattern formations (Vasiev 2004). It is described by the following equations (1-14) which have been obtained after time and space rescaling in order to allow the elimination of one of the diffusion coefficients and one of the kinetic rates

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= \Delta u + f(u, v) \\ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= D\Delta v + \varepsilon g(u, v).
\end{align*}
\]  

(1-14)

In these above equations, \( D \) is the ratio of the diffusion coefficients and \( \varepsilon \) is the ratio of the two kinetic functions \( f(u, v) \) and \( g(u, v) \). The kinetic term in the first equation is defined by a cubic function \( f(u, v) = -k_u u(u-\alpha)(u-1) - v \) (Nagumo, Arimoto et al. 1962) while in the second equation, it is simply represented by a linear function \( g(u, v) = k_v u - v \). \( k_u \) and \( k_v \) represent constants related to the kinetic terms and \( \alpha \) is a constant \( 0 < \alpha < 1 \) which is called “excitation threshold”.

**Figure 1-11: Nullclines for three different dynamical regimes described by the FHN model.**

The blue curve is the cubic nullcline \( f(u, v) = 0 \) for activator. The green curve corresponds to the linear nullcline \( g(u, v) = 0 \) for inhibitor. Three different type of system are shown. A: The origin is the only equilibrium point. This describes excitable system. B: The cubic nullcline has been shifted upward to give an oscillatory system. C: There are three equilibrium points. One can have either two unstable and one stable or two stable and one unstable. This system is bistable.

Like in the Turing model, \( u \) and \( v \) represent the activator and the inhibitor respectively. Unlike the Turing model which patterns result from the difference of diffusion rates, the FHN patterns are based on the excitable dynamics from the reaction terms. By ignoring the diffusion terms, the system above has fixed points defined by the intersections of the two nullclines \( f(u, v) = 0 \) and \( g(u, v) = 0 \). According to the nature of the intersections, the kinetic system can be classified as excitable, bistable or oscillatory. For \( \alpha \geq 0 \), one or two steady state solutions can be obtained. An oscillatory solution is obtained, for example, by adding an
extra term to the function $f(u, v)$ such that the nullcline is moved up. These are shown in Figure 1-11.

The model represented by the two equations above allows the understanding of pattern formation phenomena which occur in various chemical, physical and biological systems (Vasiev 2004). Different types of solutions can be obtained by changing the ratio of diffusion $D$ and ratio of kinetics rates $\varepsilon$.

Figure 1-12: Different 1-dimensional spatio-temporal patterns obtained from the solving of the scaled FHN equations according to the values of the parameters $D$ and $\varepsilon$ (Time: vertical axis and space: horizontal axis).

All patterns were stimulated at the middle of the medium. A: Unstable patterns and the medium returns to the homogeneous state. B: Pulsating spot. C: Stationary spots. D: Self-replicating waves. E: The location of the domains, $R_1$, $R_2$, $R_3$ and $R_4$ on the $(\varepsilon^{-1}, D_v)$ plane. $D_v$ is acting as the ratio of diffusions. $D_1$, $D_2$ and $D_3$ specify the bifurcation parameters. The domain $R_1$ corresponds to the region with propagating waves, $R_2$ corresponds to the region where one a domain where the patterns are unstable and the medium as a rule returns to the homogeneous state. $R_3$ corresponds to the domain where pulsating spots occur and $R_4$ corresponds to the domain where stationary spots arise (Vasiev 2004).

In Figure 1-12, four different scenarios are shown: propagating wave, vanishing spot, pulsating spots and stationary spots. They were obtained with different values of $D$. Propagating wave was obtained with $D=1$. $D=2$ is the case of the vanishing spot. Pulsating spots was simulated with $D=3.2$. All of these patterns can be classified into four regions which are shown in panel E of Figure 1-12.
1.8 Robustness of morphogen gradients

Mechanisms ensuring the robustness of dorso-ventral patterning in the *Drosophila* embryo against the changes in production rates (gene dosage) of involved proteins (BMP and *Sog*) have been studied both experimentally and theoretically in (Eldar, Dorfman et al. 2002). The analysis was based on detailed consideration of the dynamics of BMP, which is produced on the dorsal side of embryo, *Sog*, which is produced on the ventral side and inhibits BMP, and BMP/Sog complex which is highly diffusive. The decay of *Sog* is mediated by Tolloid (*Tld*) - another protein whose concentration is assumed constant. Interactions between these substances can be graphically represented by the following:

\[ \text{Sog} + \text{Scw} \xrightarrow{k_{b} \cdot k_{b}} \text{Sog} - \text{Scw} \]
\[ \text{Sog} + \text{Tld} \xrightarrow{\alpha} \text{Tld} \]
\[ \text{Sog} - \text{Scw} + \text{Tld} \xrightarrow{\gamma} \text{Tld} + \text{Scw}. \]

Scw is the morphogen of interest. Sog inhibits the action of Scw by forming the complex Sog–Scw. The protease Tld cleaves Sog.

![Figure 1-13: Cross section of the Drosophila embryo.](image)

*DR* means dorsal region, *NE* is Neuroectoderm (source of Sog) and *M* is mesoderm (Eldar, Dorfman et al. 2002).

These lead to the three reaction-diffusion equations:

\[
\frac{\partial [\text{Scw}]}{\partial t} = D_{\text{BMP}} \nabla^{2} [\text{Scw}] - k_{b}[\text{Sog}][\text{Scw}] + \lambda[Tld][\text{Sog} - \text{Scw}] + k_{-b}[\text{Sog} - \text{Scw}]
\]

\[
\frac{\partial [\text{Sog}]}{\partial t} = D_{s} \nabla^{2} [\text{Sog}] - k_{b}[\text{Sog}][\text{Scw}] + k_{-b}[\text{Sog} - \text{Scw}] - \alpha[Tld][\text{Sog}]
\]
where $D_{\text{BMP}}$, $D_S$ and $D_C$ are respectively the diffusion rate constants for Sog, Scw and Sog−Scw and $k_b$, $k_{-b}$, $\alpha$ and $\lambda$ are reaction rate constants.

They found out that 0.3% of the systems were stable. In these systems they show changes of less than 10%. We have decided to reproduce their results using different values of boundary fluxes to see if robustness occurs. The left panel shows three profiles with three different values of boundary fluxes. All three profiles have different concentration inside the domain. So there is no robustness. The right panel shows two profiles with two different values of boundary fluxes. As we can see, the two profiles have the same concentration everywhere. So, one can say that we have robustness (see Figure 1-14). Therefore, in this model it was shown that high diffusion of the BMP/Sog complex enhances the dorso-ventral transportation of the BMP (the term used by authors is “shuttling”). Shuttling is obtained when the BMP ligand, binding with the inhibitor Sog, diffuses. This binding also facilitates the decay of Sog. This mechanism has two advantages. First, it gives rise to a sharp gradient and second it
allows robustness to fluctuation in gene dosage (Barkai and Shilo 2009, Haskel-Ittah, Ben-Zvi et al. 2012). A further modification of this model (Ben-Zvi, Shilo et al. 2008) with two additional equations describing the dynamics of BMP ligand Admp, which also forms a highly mobile complex with the BMP inhibitor, was used to demonstrate that a shuttling mechanism can also explain scaling of BMP gradient in Xenopus embryo.

1.9 Scaling of morphogen gradient

Scaling is a particular case of robustness. Scaling of morphogen gradients is the phenomenon which is persistently observed in experiments and represents one of the central problems in today’s mathematical biology. Space-scaling would mean that the characteristic length of morphogen gradient is proportional to the size of the tissue (see Figure 1-15).

![Figure 1-15: Example of scaling with two patterns of different sizes.](image)

The ratio $x/L$ of two similar points ($x_1$ and $x_2$) of the individual to their respective lengths ($L_1$ and $L_2$) remains the same. In this figure $x_1$ is the distance between the blue and green stripe for the individual of length $L_1$ and $x_2$ is the distance between the blue and green stripe for the individual of length $L_2$.

There is scaling if, for the individuals of the same species, the ratio between the location of one characteristic point to the length of the individual remains unchanged from an individual to another

$$\frac{x_1}{L_1} = \frac{x_2}{L_2} = \text{constant}.$$

In general, if we call $x$ the location of a characteristic point and $L$ the length of the individual, we have $x/L=\text{constant}$ if we change from an individual to another.

$$\frac{x}{L} = \text{constant}.$$

We take the natural logarithm on both sides.
\[ \ln x - \ln L = \ln(\text{constant}). \]

We take the derivative on both sides.

\[
\frac{dx}{x} - \frac{dL}{L} = 0
\]

\[
\frac{dx}{x} = \frac{dL}{L}
\]

\[
S \equiv \frac{dx}{dL} \frac{L}{x}.
\]  \hspace{1cm} (1-15)

**Figure 1-16: Different scenarios associated with different values of the scaling factor S.**

In the first case S=1. The domain which spans 50% of a small embryo will also span 50% of the bigger embryo. In the case of S<1, that is hypo-scaling, a domain which spans 50% of the smaller embryo will not expand enough in a bigger embryo. And in the case of hyper-scaling, S>1, a domain which spans 50% of the smaller embryo will expand too much in a bigger embryo (De Lachapelle and Bergmann 2011).

Assuming that the threshold concentration is fixed (implying \(dC = (\partial C/\partial x)dx + (\partial C/\partial L)dL = 0\)), where \(C\) is the morphogen concentration and \(L\) is the embryo length) it follows from equation (1-15) that the scaling coefficient is

\[
S = -\frac{\partial C}{\partial L} \left( \frac{\partial C}{\partial x} \right)^{-1} \frac{L}{x}.
\]  \hspace{1cm} (1-16)
The above definition of scaling is generic and can be computed for any morphogen distribution \( C(x, t) \) (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010, De Lachapelle and Bergmann 2011). We see that this formula (1-16) depends on \( L \) and \( x \). There is a problem with the above formula because at \( x=0 \), scaling does not occur since \( S=-\infty \). This allows us to introduce a better definition of scaling.

The above formula shows that the fluctuations in embryo length, \( dL/L \), are exactly compensated by fluctuations in position, \( dx/x \), implying perfectly conserved proportions. In this case (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010), considered that \( S=1 \) corresponds to perfect scaling. When \( S<1 \) and \( S>1 \), they refer to the terms hypo- and hyper-scaling, respectively (see Figure 1-16). Hypo-scaling means that there is not enough compensation for a change in embryo size, meaning that in a bigger embryo the absolute position is not shifted enough posteriorward to keep the correct proportions. Hyper-scaling is the tendency to overcompensate for a change in embryo size (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010).

1.9.1 Scaling in Annihilation model

Scaling of morphogen gradients can result from the non-linear interactions of involved morphogens. Assuming that the scaling of the Bicoid gradient is possible because Bicoid and Nanos, which are expressed in the opposite sides of the embryo, mutually affect their diffusion and/or degradation rate (Jaeger 2009). This leads to the annihilation model which is represented as

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k_u uv \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} - k_v uv,
\end{align*}
\]

(1-17)

where \( D_u \) and \( D_v \) are the diffusion coefficients and \( k_u \) and \( k_v \) specify the decay rates. \( D_u \), \( D_v \), \( k_u \) and \( k_v \) are constant. The boundary conditions associated to this system (1-17) are:

\[
\begin{align*}
u(x=0) &= u_0, & u(x=L) &= u_L, \\
v(x=0) &= v_0, & v(x=L) &= v_L,
\end{align*}
\]

with \( u_0 \) and \( v_0 \) are the boundary values at \( x=0 \) and \( u_L \) and \( v_L \) are the boundary values at \( x=L \).

We focus on stationary state of system (1-17).
\[
\begin{align*}
D_u \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - k_u uv &= 0 \quad (1-18) \\
D_v \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - k_v uv &= 0.
\end{align*}
\]

As it is shown in the Appendix C the relationships between variables \(u\) and \(v\) is given by the following:

\[
k_v D_u u - k_u D_v v = (k_v D_u u_L - k_u D_v v_L - k_v D_u u_0 + k_u D_v v_0) \left( \frac{x}{L} \right) + k_v D_u u_0 - k_u D_v v_0.
\]

We want to simplify the system (1-18) by considering \(D_u = D_v = D\), \(k_u = k_v = k\), \(u_L = v_0 = 0\) and \(v_L = u_0\).

\[
\begin{align*}
D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - kuv &= 0 \quad (1-19) \\
D \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - kuv &= 0, \quad (1-20)
\end{align*}
\]

with the Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[
\begin{align*}
&u(x = 0) = u_0, \quad u(x = L) = 0, \\
&v(x = 0) = 0, \quad v(x = L) = u_0.
\end{align*}
\]

For quantitative analysis, we will consider the sum and the difference of the two morphogens. First, we shall add equations (1-19) and (1-20).

\[
D \frac{d^2 (u + v)}{dx^2} - 2kuv = 0. \quad (1-21)
\]

Now, we subtract equation (1-20) from (1-19)

\[
D \frac{d^2 (u - v)}{dx^2} = 0. \quad (1-22)
\]

Let \(s_+ = u + v\) and \(s_- = u - v\). Then the equations (1-21) and (1-22), in terms of \(s_+\) and \(s_-\), will become
\[
\frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} = \frac{2k}{Duv} \quad (1-23)
\]
\[
\frac{d^2 s_-}{dx^2} = 0. \quad (1-24)
\]

The solutions of \( s_+ \) (see (1-23)) and \( s_- \) (see (1-24)) are written as (see appendix C for full derivation).

\[
s_- = u_0 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right) \quad (1-25)
\]

\[
s_+ = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( 1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) - \frac{4}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^2 - \frac{L^2 u_0^2}{96} \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^4. \quad (1-26)
\]

The solution \( s_- \) (see (1-25)) is a function of the relative position \( x/L \), \( s_- = s_-(x/L) \) and therefore scales with the size of the medium. However, the solution \( s_+ \) (see (1-26)) does not scale since in addition to \( x/L \) it depends on the size, \( L \), of the medium, \( s_+ = s_+(x/L, L) \).

### 1.9.2 Scaling in the expansion-repression model

Most models of patterning formation by morphogen gradients do not exhibit the scaling property. (Ben-Zvi and Barkai 2010) show that the use of general feedback technology, in which the range of the morphogen gradient increases with the abundance of some molecule, whose production, in turn, is repressed by morphogen signalling. The derivation of their model is reproduced here for sake of clarity. It uses a single morphogen \( M \) secreted from a local source and diffuses in a naïve field of cells to establish a concentration gradient that peaks at the source. The distribution of this morphogen is governed by

\[
\frac{\partial[M]}{\partial t} = Dm \nabla^2 [M] - \frac{\alpha_m}{1 + [E]} [M]
\]
\[
\frac{\partial[E]}{\partial t} = D_E \nabla^2 [E] - \alpha_e [E] + \frac{\beta_e}{1 + ([M]/T_0)^n},
\]

37
where $D_M$ and $D_E$ are the diffusion coefficients of $M$ and $E$ respectively, $\alpha_M$ and $\alpha_E$ are the degradation rates of $M$ and $E$ respectively, $\beta_E$ is the production rate of $E$, $h$ is the hill coefficient and $T_0$ is the threshold concentration.

**Figure 1-17: Dynamics of the expansion-repression mechanism.**

Initially, the morphogen and the expander diffuse from opposite ends. The morphogen repressed the expression of the expander when its level is above the threshold reference $T_{rep}$. The expander which is diffusible and stable expands the morphogen gradient by increasing the diffusion and/or reducing the degradation rate. At a later time, the expander accumulates, the gradient of the morphogen expands and the production domain of the expander shrinks. At steady state, the expander has accumulated and the gradient of the morphogen is wide enough to repress the production of the expander everywhere (Ben-Zvi and Barkai 2010).

It can be shown that the morphogen profile $M(x)$ can be written as

$$M(x) = M(x/L, \rho),$$

where $L$ is the size of the medium and $\rho$ the morphogen production rate. This dependency of the morphogen profile $M(x)$ to the ratio $x/L$ shows the scaling property of the expansion-repression model. Perfect scaling occurs if the profile $M$ is insensitive to $\rho$. However, it has been noticed that this dependency is typically small (Ben-Zvi and Barkai 2010). This model is not particularly good because the authors did not specify the natures of the morphogen $M$ and $E$. Hence, the relationship between them is highly speculative. And furthermore, the expander, which is the red profile shown in Figure 1-17, takes too long to reach the steady-state. Our simulations of this model confirm this tendency; it takes about $10^7$ time steps to observe levelling of the morphogen in the medium using this model. In the next chapter, we show that we can have scaling with only one assumption.
1.10 Concentration-dependent diffusion and scaling of morphogen gradients

In all of the previous reaction-diffusion models of pattern formation, the diffusion and the degradation rates of the morphogens were assumed to be constant. Hence, starting from the reaction diffusion equation

\[ \frac{\partial m}{\partial t} = D_m \frac{\partial^2 m}{\partial x^2} - k_m m, \]

where \( D_m \) and \( k_m \) are respectively the diffusion and the reaction rates of the morphogen \( m \). (Umulis and Othmer 2013) have shown that the conditions to achieve scale invariance throughout the domain are that the quantities \( q/\sqrt{(k_m D_m)} \) and \( k_m L^2/D_m \) must be independent of the length \( L \). In the first quantity, \( q \) represents the input flux of the morphogen \( m \). The second quantity constitutes the ratio between the diffusion time scale \( L^2/D_m \) and the reaction time scale \( 1/k_m \). The second quantity implies that scale invariant distribution of morphogen can be achieved by controlling the time scales of the diffusion and reaction. If each of the parameters \( D_m, k_m \) and \( q \) vary with \( L \) according to a power law, for instance \( D_m \sim L^a \) where \( a \) is a power, then it can be established all possible ways of parameter variation that lead to global scale invariance.

The above results are valid for a system containing other species in the patterning scheme. A scaling factor for all diffusion coefficients and a scaling factor for all reactions must be identified if the pattern of all species is to be scale invariant.

In order to assess how the change of the diffusion rate with the morphogen concentration affect the scaling property of the morphogens gradient, different models involving a modulator which is used to adjust the characteristic times scales of diffusion and/or reaction in a size-dependent manner have been introduced (Umulis, O'Connor et al. 2008, Umulis and Othmer 2013). The reaction diffusion equations involving the morphogen \( m \) and the modulator \( M \) are given by

\[ \frac{\partial m}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (D_m (M) \nabla m) + k(M)R_m(m, M), \]

\[ \frac{\partial M}{\partial t} = D_M \nabla^2 M + R_n(m, M). \]
The first equation describes the morphogen transport which includes modulation of diffusion and reaction terms by $M$. The second provides the balance equation of the modulator $M$ which diffusion rate $D_M$ may or may not be regulated by the morphogen. It has been shown that if the modulator hinders diffusion and/or enhances reaction rates, then scaling can be ensured if $M$ decreases in proportion to the tissue size by an appropriate amount (Table 1-1).

For instance, the diffusion and reaction rates are given respectively by $D_m(M)=D_m/(1+\alpha_1 M)$ and $k(M)=k(1+\alpha_2 M)$. The general requirements to ensure scaling by modulation of $D_m(M)$ and $k(M)$ are summarised in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$\alpha_1$</th>
<th>$\alpha_2$</th>
<th>$D_m(M)$</th>
<th>$k(M)$</th>
<th>$M$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enhancer</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>constant</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim L^{-2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobiliser</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\sim M^{-1}$</td>
<td>constant</td>
<td>$\sim L^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>$\sim M^{-1}$</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim L^{-1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 1-1: Enhancer/Immobiliser.*

Alternatively, if the modulator enhances diffusion and/or hinders reaction rates, then scaling can be ensured if $M$ increases in proportion to the tissue size by an appropriate amount (Table 1-2). For instance, the diffusion and reaction rates are given respectively by $D_m(M)=D_m(1+\alpha_1 M)$ and $k(M)=k/(1+\alpha_2 M)$. The general requirements to ensure scaling by modulation of $D_m(M)$ and $k(M)$ are summarised in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$\alpha_1$</th>
<th>$\alpha_2$</th>
<th>$D_m(M)$</th>
<th>$k(M)$</th>
<th>$M$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inhibitor</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>constant</td>
<td>$\sim M^{-1}$</td>
<td>$\sim L^{2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobiliser</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim L^{1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>$&gt;0$</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim M$</td>
<td>$\sim L^{1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 1-2: Inhibitor/Mobiliser.*
Chapter 2 Scaling in continuous model

In the previous chapter we have pointed out that biological patterns are commonly scaling with the size of biological objects. We saw a few mathematical models and discussed scaling properties of their solutions. Particularly we have pointed out that the exponential profiles appearing as solutions of diffusion/decay models do not scale. The aim of this chapter is to incorporate modifications into the model such that its solution scales. A new quantity called “scaling factor” will be introduced to measure scaling properties of morphogen gradients occurring as solutions of mathematical models.

The structure of this chapter is as follows. In Section 2.1, we discuss robustness. Then in Section 2.2, we deal with a particular case of robustness that is scaling. In this section, we also introduce our definition of the scaling factor. This is follows by a couple of examples. In Section 2.3, we analyse the scaling properties of the one-variable model with all the types of boundary conditions. Next, we introduce two mechanisms of scaling of the exponential model in sections 2.4 and 2.5. In section 2.6, we deal with the annihilation model. In section 2.7, we discuss about the nuclear trapping model. And we finish with scaling of the active transport in section 2.8.

2.1 Defining robustness factor

An important aspect of development is its robustness. Robustness is the ability of such gradients to resist change in the face of genetic and environmental perturbations. In terms of concentration profiles of morphogens we can introduce the factor measuring the robustness based on the relocation of the point with certain concentration of morphogens in the following way. Assume that if we change a parameter from $p$ to $p+\Delta p$ then this point shifts from $x$ to $x+\Delta x$. To illustrate this, let’s assume that the morphogene profile depends on a certain parameter $p$ and consider two morphogens profiles coresponding to different values of parameter (see Figure 2-1).

In Figure 2-1, the blue and the red profiles are respectively $u(x, 1)$ and $u(x, 2)$. If $u=u_0$ is a threshold for cell differentiation then the boundary of differentiated cells domain will shift by $\Delta x$. $\Delta x$ therefore describes robustness of the system (left panel). This allow us to develope a formula for robustness.
**Figure 2-1:** On introduction of robustness factor. Hypothetical morphogene profiles for two different values of parameter $p$ are used as an illustration.

**Definition:** The profile is robust across the two objects if

$$u(x, p_1) = u(x, p_2)$$

for a point $x$.

Generally, this is not true and from $u(x_1, p_1) = u(x_2, p_2)$ it does’t follow that $x_1 = x_2$. For this case we can introduce the scaling factor in the following way. Assume that $u(x_1, p_1) = u(x_2, p_2)$.

For small differences in $p$ and in $x$, we can write:

$$u(x_2, p_2) = u(x_1, p_1) + u_x'(x_2 - x_1) + u_p'(p_2 - p_1)$$

$$u_x'(x_2 - x_1) + u_p'(p_2 - p_1) = 0.$$  

From the above formula the relocation of the level point is given as:

$$x_2 - x_1 = -\frac{u_p'}{u_x'}(p_2 - p_1),$$

i.e. the deformation of the profile is proportional to the parameter $p$ of the system with the coefficient of proportionality representing robustness factor:

$$R = -\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial p}\right)\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)^{-1}.$$  

The above formula depends on parameter $p$ and $x$. The robustness factor $R$ tells us how much shift there is at any point $x$. If there is no shift at point $x$, then we say that $R = 0$. This means that we have good scaling. We shall apply the above formula to two examples. The first
example, we consider, is for two exponential profiles of \( u \) in the form of \( e^{-px} \). In order to determine the robustness factor \( R \), we need to differentiate \( u \) with respect to \( p \) and \( x \).

\[
\begin{align*}
    u_p' &= -xe^{px} \\
    u_x' &= -pe^{px}.
\end{align*}
\]

And, we calculate the ratio between the two derivatives \( u_p' \) and \( u_x' \).

\[
R(x, p) = -\frac{x}{p}. \tag{2-1}
\]

The above formula shows that good robustness occurs at \( x=0 \). The plot of (2-1) is shown in Figure 2-2.

**Figure 2-2: Plot of the robustness factor for the blue exponential profile in Figure 2-1.**

As we can see, The robustness factor gives us a straight profile. This confirms the analytical derivation. We see that at \( x=0 \), the robustness factor is 0.

As second example, we consider the calculation of the robustness factor \( R \) is for the case of two quadratic profiles of \( u \). For a quadratic profile, the equation is written as

\[
u(x, p) = px(x-4) + 4 = px^2 - 4px + 4. \tag{2-2}
\]

The derivatives of \( u \) with respect to \( x \) and \( p \) are respectively.

\[
\begin{align*}
    u_p' &= x^2 - 4x \\
    u_x' &= 2px - 4p,
\end{align*}
\]

And the robustness factor \( R \) is
The above formula shows that at $x=0$ and $x=4$, $R=0$ which means that we have good robustness. The plots of (2-2) and (2-3) are shown in Figure 2-3.

\[ R(x, p) = \frac{x^2 - 4x}{2px - 4p}. \]  

Figure 2-3: Two quadratic profiles $u=px(x-4)+4$ for different values of $p$ and plot of the robustness factor for the quadratic profiles of $u$.

A: $p_1=0.5$ is the $u$ concentration for the blue profile and $p_2=0.6$ is the $u$ concentration for the red profile. B: The robustness factor is 0 at the end since both profiles have the same concentration. In the middle, the scaling factor is not defined. This is because in panel A, the derivative of $u$-profile at this point is zero.

### 2.2 Defining scaling factor

In order to analyse scaling properties of morphogenetic gradients we need to introduce a formal definition of scaling. In order to define it let us consider a morphogenetic profile occurring in two objects of different sizes, say $L_1$ and $L_2$. These profiles can be described by functions $u(\zeta, L_1)$ and $u(\zeta, L_2)$ where $\zeta=x/L$ gives a coordinate in the range [0,1] for both objects (see Figure 2.4).

**Definition:** The profile is scaled across the two objects if

$$u(\zeta, L_1)=u(\zeta, L_2)$$

for a point $\zeta$.

Generally this is not true and from $u(\zeta_1, L_1)=u(\zeta_2, L_2)$ it doesn’t follow that $\zeta_1=\zeta_2$. For this case we can introduce the scaling factor in the following way. Assume that $u(\zeta_1, L_1)=u(\zeta_2, L_2)$. For small differences in $L$ and in $\zeta$, we can write:
\[ u(\xi_2, L_2) = u(\xi_1, L_1) + u'_\xi(\xi_2 - \xi_1) + u'_L(L_2 - L_1) \]
\[ u'_\xi(\xi_2 - \xi_1) + u'_L(L_2 - L_1) = 0. \]

\[ \xi_2 - \xi_1 = -\frac{u'_L}{u'_\xi}(L_2 - L_1), \]

i.e. the deformation of the profile is proportional to the change in the size of the system with the coefficient of proportionality representing scaling factor:

\[ S = -\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial L} \right) \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right)^{-1}. \]  

(2-4)

Thus the scaling factor, \( S \), is a function of the length of the medium, \( L \), and the relative position, \( \xi \). Our definition of scaling factor is different from the one given by (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010) (formula (1-15)) since the latter depends on \( x \) rather than on \( \xi \). Since \( \xi \) is between 0 and 1, we are working on dimensionless. The scaling factor tells us how much shift there is at any point \( \xi \). If there is no shift at point \( \xi \), then we say that \( S=0 \). This means that we have good scaling. This formula is important because if during the development, the proportionality is not maintained then the organism will be deformed. We will use this formula for this and next chapter. Now, we consider a couple of examples of which profiles scale and which do not.
**Case 1: Linear profile**

Assume that we have a linear profile \( u \) which is described by the French Flag model in the form \( u = Ax + B \) where \( A \) and \( B \) are constants to be determined. The Dirichlet boundary conditions are \( u(0) = u_0 \) and \( u(L) = u_L \). The full solution is written as

\[
  u = u_0 + \left( u_L - u_0 \right) \frac{x}{L},
\]

with \( A = u_L - u_0 \) and \( B = u_0 \). For the case when the medium size is slightly bigger, \( L + \Delta L \), the profile will have the same form \( u = Ax + B \). The Dirichlet boundary conditions now will take a form: \( u(0) = u_0 \) and \( u(L + \Delta L) = u_L \). The full solution for this case is written as

\[
  u = u_0 + \left( u_L - u_0 \right) \frac{x}{L + \Delta L}.
\]

As we can see, the coefficient \( B \) is equal to \( u_0 \) for both cases but for the medium of larger size the coefficient \( A \) is smaller than for the medium of smaller size. For the case of solution (2-5) we can replace \( x/L \) by \( \xi \). But the case of solution (2-6) we should replace \( x/(L + \Delta L) \) by \( \xi \). Therefore, the solutions (2-5) and (2-6) in terms of \( \xi \) are written as

\[
  u = u_0 + \left( u_L - u_0 \right) \xi.
\]

The above solution is independent of \( L \). The scaling factor for this solution calculated according to the formula (2-4) shows that the scaling factor is 0 for all locations and all medium sizes. This shows that we have perfect scaling.

**Case 2: Exponential profile**

Let’s consider and exponential profile which has an equation of the form \( u = e^{-ks} = e^{-k\xi} \). We apply the formula for the scaling factor. First, we differentiate \( u \) with respect to \( L \)

\[
  u'_L = -k\xi e^{-k\xi L}.
\]

And then, we differentiate \( u \) with respect to \( \xi \).

\[
  u'_\xi = -kLe^{-k\xi L}.
\]
The calculation of the scaling factor gives

$$S = -\frac{\xi}{L}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (2-7)

The above formula shows that at $\xi=0$, we have good scaling. We can also have good scaling as $L$ gets bigger. The plot of (2-7) for the case of $L=1$ is shown in Figure 2-5.

![Figure 2-5: Scaling factor for the exponential profile $u=e^{-\xi}$.](image)

The scaling factor is 0 at $\xi=0$ meaning that we have good scaling. As $\xi$ increases, the scaling factor decreases.

### 2.3 Scaling in one-variable model

The body plan of the fly embryo along the anterior-posterior axis is determined by a cascade of regulatory events. Maternal mRNA (messenger Ribonucleic acid) such as bicoid is required for early patterning. It is located at the anterior pole ($x=0$). Once synthesized, the Bicoid protein diffuses posteriorly forming a protein gradient exponentially. This phenomenon can be illustrated by the single gradient model (see (1-1))(McHale, Rappel et al. 2006, Sablic 2012). We want to investigate the scaling properties of this model. Let $u$ be the concentration of the morphogen which obeys the stationary equation (see (2-8)) of (1-1).

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k_u u.$$  \hspace{1cm} (2-8)

Here $D_u$ is the diffusion coefficient and $k_u$ is the degradation rate. Both $D_u$ and $k_u$ are constant. The features of the solution including its scaling strongly depend on the boundary conditions. Regarding this, let us consider a few different cases:
Case A: We have the Dirichlet boundary condition at both ends

\[ u(x = 0) = u_0, \quad u(x = L) = u_L, \]

where \( u_0 \) and \( u_L \) are the boundary values at \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \) respectively. The stationary solution of \( u \) from equation (2-8) is written as

\[ u = \frac{(u_L - u_0 e^{-L \lambda}) e^{x \lambda} + (u_0 e^{L \lambda} - u_L) e^{-x \lambda}}{e^{L \lambda} - e^{-L \lambda}}, \]

with \( \lambda = (k_u/D_u)^{1/2} \). We rewrite the solution of \( u \) as a function of \( \xi \) in order to determine the scaling factor.

\[ u = \frac{(u_L - u_0 e^{-L \lambda}) e^{\xi L \lambda} + (u_0 e^{L \lambda} - u_L) e^{-\xi L \lambda}}{e^{L \lambda} - e^{-L \lambda}}. \] (2-9)

The formula of the scaling factor is too long for the general case. We have decided to take some representative values of \( u_0 \) and \( u_L \) for example \( u_0=1 \) and \( u_L=0 \). The expression of the scaling factor with these values is defined as

\[ S = \frac{(\xi - 2)(e^{\xi L} - e^{-\xi L}) + \xi (e^{-L(\xi-2)} - e^{L(\xi-2)})}{L(e^L - e^{-L})(e^{L(\xi-1)} + e^{-L(\xi-1)})}. \] (2-10)

Figure 2-6: Plots of profiles for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) and the scaling factor for \( L=1 \).

A: The blue and red profiles represent for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) respectively. We use \( k_u = D_u = 1 \) to give \( \lambda = 1 \). B: We see that the scaling factor at \( \xi=0 \) and \( \xi=1 \) is zero. Elsewhere, the scaling factor is negative.

The formula of the scaling factor is too long for the general case. We have decided to take some representative values of \( u_0 \) and \( u_L \) for example \( u_0=1 \) and \( u_L=0 \). The expression of the scaling factor with these values is defined as

\[ S = \frac{(\xi - 2)(e^{\xi L} - e^{-\xi L}) + \xi (e^{-L(\xi-2)} - e^{L(\xi-2)})}{L(e^L - e^{-L})(e^{L(\xi-1)} + e^{-L(\xi-1)})}. \] (2-10)
The above formula shows that it is a function of both \( L \) and \( \xi \). The plots of (2-9) and (2-10) are shown in Figure 2-6.

**Case B:** So far, we had Dirichlet boundary condition at both ends \((x=0 \text{ and } x=L)\). Now, one can have Dirichlet boundary condition at \( x=0 \) and Neumann boundary conditions at \( x=L \) or vice versa. This is known as mixed boundary condition. We consider the system (2-8) with the following boundary conditions: Neumann boundary condition at \( x=0 \), \( u(x=0)'=-j_0 \) and the Dirichlet boundary condition at \( x=L \), \( u(x=L)=u_L \). The stationary solution of \( u \) with the mixed boundary condition is written as

\[
u = \frac{\left( \lambda u_L - j_0 e^{-L\lambda} \right) e^{x\lambda} + \left( \lambda u_L + j_0 e^{L\lambda} \right) e^{-x\lambda}}{\lambda \left( e^{L\lambda} + e^{-L\lambda} \right)},
\]

where \( j_0 \) is the boundary flux at \( x=0 \), \( u_L \) is the boundary value at \( x=L \) and \( \lambda = (k_u/D_u)^{1/2} \). We shall rewrite the solution of \( u \) as a function of \( \xi \) in order to compute the scaling factor.

\[
u = \frac{\left( \lambda u_L - j_0 e^{-L\lambda} \right) e^{L\xi} + \left( \lambda u_L + j_0 e^{L\lambda} \right) e^{-L\xi}}{\lambda \left( e^{L\lambda} + e^{-L\lambda} \right)}.
\]  

(2-11)

The formula of the scaling factor will be too long for the general case. Therefore we have decided to consider two subcases:

**Figure 2-7:** Plots of profiles for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) and the scaling factor for \( L=1 \).

**A:** The blue and red profiles represent for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) respectively. We use \( k_u=D_u=1 \) to give \( \lambda=1 \). **B:** At \( \xi=0 \), the scaling factor is at infinity since the derivative is 0. As \( \xi \) increases, the scaling factor decreases fast. This is because the two profiles are getting closer to each other. The scaling factor at \( \xi=1 \) is zero.
**Case B₁:** For the first case, we choose \( j_0 = 0 \) and \( u_L = 1 \). Therefore the scaling factor with these values is written as

\[
S = -\frac{(\xi - 1)\left(e^{L(1 + \xi)} - e^{-L(1 + \xi)}\right) + (\xi + 1)\left(e^{L(\xi - 1)} - e^{-L(\xi - 1)}\right)}{L\left(e^L + e^{-L}\right)\left(e^{L\xi} + e^{-L\xi}\right)}.
\]  

(2-12)

The above formula shows that it is a function of both \( L \) and \( \xi \). The plots of (2-11) and (2-12) are shown in Figure 2-7.

**Case B₂:** For the second case, we take \( j_0 = 1 \) and \( u_L = 0 \). The scaling factor formula with these values of \( j_0 \) and \( u_L \) is given as

\[
S = -\frac{(\xi - 2)\left(e^{\xi L} + e^{-\xi L}\right) + \xi\left(e^{L(\xi - 2)} + e^{-L(\xi - 2)}\right)}{L\left(e^L + e^{-L}\right)\left(e^{L(\xi - 1)} + e^{-L(\xi - 1)}\right)}.
\]  

(2-13)

The formula (2-13) shows that it is a function of both \( L \) and \( \xi \). The plots of (2-11) and (2-13) are shown in Figure 2-8.

---

**Figure 2-8:** Plots of profiles for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) and the scaling factor for \( L=1 \).

A: The blue and red profiles represent for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) respectively. We use \( k_u=D_u=1 \) to give \( \lambda=1 \). B: As \( \xi \) increases, the scaling factor gets smaller.

**Case C:** From case A, we had Dirichlet boundary condition at both ends and from case B, we had mixed boundary conditions. From the latter case, we didn’t consider the second type of mixed boundary condition (Dirichlet boundary condition at \( x=0 \) and Neumann boundary conditions at \( x=L \)) because the profiles with this boundary condition will be symmetric compared in Figure 2-7 and Figure 2-8. Now, one can consider the Neumann boundary condition at both \( x=0 \), \( (u(x=0)'=j_0) \) and \( x=L, (u(x=L)'=j_L) \). The solution of \( u \) with the Neumann boundary condition is.
\[ u = \frac{(j_L - j_0 e^{-L\lambda}) e^{x\lambda} + (j_L - j_0 e^{L\lambda}) e^{-x\lambda}}{\lambda (e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda})}, \]

where \( j_0 \) and \( j_L \) are the boundary fluxes at \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \) respectively and \( \lambda = (k_d/D_u)^{1/2} \). We shall rewrite the solution of \( u \) as a function of \( \xi \) in order to compute the scaling factor.

\[ u = \frac{(j_L - j_0 e^{-L\lambda}) e^{L\xi \lambda} + (j_L - j_0 e^{L\lambda}) e^{-L\xi \lambda}}{\lambda (e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda})}. \tag{2-14} \]

**Figure 2-9:** Plots of profiles for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) and the scaling factor for \( L=1 \).

A: The blue and red profiles represent for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) respectively. We use \( k_u=D_u=1 \) to give \( \lambda=1 \). B: The scaling factor at \( \xi=0 \) is not zero since in panel A, the two profiles do not start with the same concentration. As \( \xi \) increases, the scaling factor decreases. Furthermore, the scaling factor tends to \(-\infty\) at \( \xi=1 \) since the denominator of \( S \) is 0.

The formula of the scaling factor will be too long for the general case. We choose \( j_0=-1 \) and \( j_L=0 \). Therefore, the scaling factor with these values is written as

\[ S = \frac{(\xi-2) \left(e^{\xi L} + e^{-\xi L}\right) - \xi \left(L e^{L(\xi-2)} + e^{-L(\xi-2)}\right)}{L \left(e^L - e^{-L}\right) \left(e^{L(\xi-1)} - e^{-L(\xi-1)}\right)}. \tag{2-15} \]

The above formula shows that it is a function of both \( L \) and \( \xi \). The plots of (2-14) and (2-15) are shown in Figure 2-9.
2.3.1 Effect of $\lambda$ for Dirichlet boundary condition

Previously, we have investigated scaling for all boundary conditions. We see that in Figure 2-6 to Figure 2-9, the exponential profiles and their scaling factor depends on the values of $L$ and $\lambda$. Now we will investigate the effect of $\lambda$ for scaling properties of exponential profiles under the Dirichlet boundary conditions. Let’s use the same values of $u_0$ and $u_L$. The scaling factor $S$ including $\lambda$ is given as follows

$$S = \frac{(\xi - 2)(e^{\xi L \lambda} - e^{-\xi L \lambda}) + \xi (e^{-L\lambda(\xi - 2)} - e^{L\lambda(\xi - 2)})}{L(e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda}) (e^{L\lambda(\xi - 1)} + e^{-L\lambda(\xi - 1)})},$$  

(2-16)

where $\xi = x/L$. Assume that $\lambda << 1$ meaning that $k_u << D_u$. The first order of the Taylor expansions of the exponentials gives

$$e^{\xi L \lambda} \approx 1 + \xi L \lambda$$

$$e^{-\xi L \lambda} \approx 1 - \xi L \lambda$$

$$e^{L\lambda(\xi - 2)} \approx 1 + L\lambda (\xi - 2) = 1 + L\lambda \xi - 2L \lambda$$

$$e^{-L\lambda(\xi - 2)} \approx 1 - L\lambda (\xi - 2) = 1 - L\lambda \xi + 2L \lambda$$

$$e^{L\lambda} \approx 1 + L\lambda$$

$$e^{-L\lambda} \approx 1 - L\lambda$$

$$e^{L\lambda(\xi - 1)} \approx 1 + L\lambda (\xi - 1) = 1 + L\lambda \xi - L \lambda$$

$$e^{-L\lambda(\xi - 1)} \approx 1 - L\lambda (\xi - 1) = 1 - L\lambda \xi + L \lambda.$$

By substituting these approximations into the scaling solution $S$ (2-16), we get

$$S \approx -\frac{(\xi - 2)(1 + \xi L \lambda - 1 + \xi L \lambda) + \xi (1 - L\lambda \xi + 2L \lambda - 1 - L\lambda \xi + 2L \lambda)}{L(1 + L\lambda - (1 - L\lambda))(1 + L\lambda \xi - L \lambda + 1 - L\lambda \xi + L \lambda)} =$$

$$= \frac{2\xi L \lambda (\xi - 2) + \xi (-2L \lambda \xi + 4L \lambda)}{L(1 + L\lambda - (1 - L\lambda))(1 + L\lambda \xi - L \lambda + 1 - L\lambda \xi + L \lambda)} =$$

$$= -\frac{2L \lambda \xi^2 - 4\xi L \lambda - 2L \lambda \xi^2 + 4\xi L \lambda}{L(1 + L\lambda - (1 - L\lambda))(1 + L\lambda \xi - L \lambda + 1 - L\lambda \xi + L \lambda)} = 0.$$  

Therefore:

$$S \approx 0.$$
We end up with $S=0$ which implies that we have perfect scaling. The plot with three different values of $\lambda$ is shown in Figure 2-10.

![Figure 2-10: Plots of u-profiles for two different medium sizes and three values of $\lambda$](image)

The continuous and dotted profiles stand for $L=1$ and $L=2$ respectively. The green, red and blue curves are plotted for $\lambda=10$, 1 and 0.1. As $\lambda$ gets smaller, the two profiles get closer to each other. Therefore, the scaling factor tends to zero. This is getting closer to the french flag model since in this model there is no degradation term (see Figure 1-8).

### 2.3.2 Effect of $\lambda$ for Neumann boundary condition

Previously, we saw that we had perfect scaling if the degradation rate $k_u$ is much smaller than the diffusion rate $D_u$ for the case of Dirichlet boundary condition. Now we shall analyze the scaling properties of exponential profile under the Neumann boundary condition. Let’s use the same values of $j_0$ and $j_L$. The formula of the scaling factor including $\lambda$ is written as

$$S = -\frac{(\xi - 2)(e^{\xi L\lambda} + e^{-\xi L\lambda}) - \xi(e^{L\lambda(\xi-2)} + e^{-L\lambda(\xi-2)})}{L(e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda})(e^{L\lambda(\xi-1)} - e^{-L\lambda(\xi-1)})}, \quad (2-17)$$

where $\xi = x/L$. First, we assume that $\lambda \ll 1$. The first order of the Taylor expansions of the exponentials gives

$$e^{\xi L\lambda} \approx 1 + \xi L\lambda$$

$$e^{-\xi L\lambda} \approx 1 - \xi L\lambda$$

$$e^{L\lambda(-2+\xi)} \approx 1 + L\lambda(2+\xi) = 1 + L\lambda \xi - 2L\lambda$$

$$e^{-L\lambda(-2+\xi)} \approx 1 - L\lambda(2+\xi) = 1 - L\lambda \xi + 2L\lambda$$

$$e^{L\lambda} \approx 1 + L\lambda$$
\[ e^{-L\lambda} \approx 1 - L\lambda \]
\[ e^{L\lambda(-1+\xi)} \approx 1 + L\lambda(-1+\xi) = 1 + L\lambda\xi - L\lambda \]
\[ e^{-L\lambda(-1+\xi)} \approx 1 - L\lambda(-1+\xi) = 1 - L\lambda\xi + L\lambda. \]

The numerator of (2-17) can be approximated as

\[
(e^{\lambda\xi L} + e^{-\lambda\xi L}) - \xi \left( e^{\lambda L(\xi-2)} + e^{-\lambda L(\xi-2)} \right) = \\
\approx (\xi - 2)(1 + \lambda\xi L + 1 - \lambda\xi L) - \xi \left( 1 + \lambda L\xi - 2\lambda L + 1 - \lambda L\xi + 2\lambda L \right) = -4.
\]

The denominator of (2-17) can be approximated as

\[
L \left( e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda} \right) \left( e^{L\lambda(\xi-1)} - e^{-L\lambda(\xi-1)} \right) = \\
L \left( 1 + \lambda L - (1 - \lambda L) \right) \left( 1 + L\lambda(\xi - 1) - (1 - L\lambda(\xi - 1)) \right) = \\
= 4L^3\lambda^2(\xi - 1).
\]

The scaling factor \( S \) can be approximated as

\[
S \approx \frac{1}{L^3\lambda^2(\xi - 1)}. \quad (2-18)
\]

The above formula, for the case when \( \lambda \ll 1 \), shows that at \( \xi = 0 \), the scaling factor is negative. As \( \xi = 1 \), the scaling is at \( -\infty \). Hence, scaling doesn’t occur at all. And second, we assume that \( \lambda \gg 1 \). The numerator of (2-17) can be approximated as

\[
(\xi - 2) \left( e^{\lambda\xi L} + e^{-\lambda\xi L} \right) - \xi \left( e^{\lambda L(\xi-2)} + e^{-\lambda L(\xi-2)} \right) = \\
\approx e^{\lambda\xi L}(\xi - 2) - e^{-\lambda L(\xi-2)}.
\]

And the denominator of (2-17) can be approximated as

\[
L \left( e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda} \right) \left( e^{L\lambda(\xi-1)} - e^{-L\lambda(\xi-1)} \right) \approx -Le^{L\Lambda} e^{-L\lambda(\xi-1)} = -Le^{L\lambda(2-\xi)}.
\]

Therefore, the scaling factor \( S \) can be approximated as

\[
S \approx \frac{e^{\lambda\xi L}(\xi - 2) - e^{-\lambda L(\xi-2)}}{Le^{L\lambda(2-\xi)}} = \\
\frac{(\xi - 2)e^{\lambda\xi L}}{Le^{L\lambda(2-\xi)}} - \frac{\xi}{L} = \frac{(\xi - 2)e^{2L\lambda(\xi-1)}}{L} - \frac{\xi}{L}
\]

or after further simplifications:
\[ S = -\frac{\xi}{L}. \]  

The above formula, for the case when \( \lambda \gg 1 \), shows that at \( \xi = 0 \), we have good scaling. We can also have good scaling as \( L \) gets bigger. The plots of (2-18) and (2-19) are shown in Figure 2-11.

\[ \text{Figure 2-11: Plots of scaling factor for the Neumann boundary conditions.} \]

A: Scaling factor for the case when \( \lambda \) is very small. As \( \xi \) increases, the scaling tends to \(-\infty\) since at \( \xi = 1 \), the denominator of (2-18) is zero. We used \( L = 1 \) and \( \lambda = 0.01 \). B: Scaling factor for the case when \( \lambda \) is very big. The blue, red and green profiles correspond for \( L = 10, 100 \) and 1000 respectively. We have good scaling at \( \xi = 0 \) for all profiles since the scaling factor at this point is zero. As \( L \) gets bigger, (see (2-19)) the scaling factor tends to zero.

As we can notice in Figure 2-11, if \( \lambda \) is very small then the scaling factor will be large (in absolute value) which will not be very good. If \( \lambda \) is large, then the scaling factor will tends to zero under certain conditions.

Now let’s come back to the solution of \( u \) with respect to \( \xi \) (see (2-14)) with the same values of \( j_0 \) and \( j_L \):

\[ u = \frac{e^{L\lambda(\xi-1)} + e^{L\lambda(1-\xi)}}{\lambda \left( e^{L\lambda} - e^{-L\lambda} \right)}. \]

Assume that \( \lambda \ll 1 \). Then the exponential terms in the above solution \( u \) can be approximated by

\[ u \approx \frac{1 + L\lambda (\xi - 1) + L\lambda (1 - \xi)}{\lambda (1 + \lambda L - (1 - \lambda L))} = \frac{1 + L\lambda \xi - L\lambda + 1 + L\lambda - L\lambda \xi}{2L\lambda^2} = \frac{1}{L\lambda^2} = \frac{D_a}{k_a L}. \]

As we can see the solution (2-20) is represented by a constant value (leveled up profile) which is inversely proportional to the size of the medium. The solution (2-20) is not scaling.
at all (scaling factor \( S=\infty \)). However, it can be used for coupling with other variables in a way that the variable is scaled. This technique will be demonstrated in the next section.

### 2.4 Scaling of exponential profile (mechanism 1)

In the previous section, we found out that scaling occurs when \( \lambda \) is very small for the case of the Dirichlet boundary condition. For the case of the Neumann boundary condition, there is no scaling at all when \( \lambda \) is very small. And when \( \lambda \) is large, scaling occurs if \( L \) is large. We apply the solution (2-20) in this section. Assume that there is another morphogen whose decay is affected by the first morphogen so that its concentration \( v \) is given by the equation (Vasieva, Rasolonjanahary et al. 2013).

\[
D_v \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - k_v u^2 = 0,
\]

with the following boundary conditions

\[
v(x = 0) = v_0, \quad \left. \frac{dv}{dx} \right|_{x=L} = j_v,
\]

where \( v_0 \) is the boundary value at \( x=0 \) and \( j_v \) is the boundary flux at \( x=L \). The solution of equation (2-21) for \( v \) is written as a superposition of two exponents. But if the size of the medium is large enough then \( v(x) \) can be approximated by only one exponent (see Appendix B for full derivation).

\[
v(x) \approx v_0 e^{-\frac{k_v x^2}{2D_v}} = v_0 e^{-\frac{k_v}{L^2} \frac{D_v}{D_u} L} = v_0 e^{-\frac{k_v}{k_u L} \frac{D_u}{D_v}} = v_0 e^{-\frac{x}{L} \frac{D_u}{k_u L} \frac{D_u}{D_v}}.
\]

The solution of equation (2-22) is a function of the relative position \( \xi = x/L \) rather than the position \( x \) and therefore it scales with the size of the medium. The plot of solution (2-22) is shown in Figure 2-12.

One of the mechanisms of scaling (which is also behind the expansion–repression model (Ben-Zvi and Barkai 2010) can be illustrated in a simple setting. Assume that the production rate of a certain morphogen is constant and it degrades uniformly in the medium. Also assume that the morphogen diffuses quickly so that its level is roughly the same over the
entire medium. If \( u \) denotes the concentration of the morphogen and it degrades with rate \( k_u u \) at each ‘point’, then the total degradation rate over the medium of size \( L \) is \( k_u u L \). If the total production rate over the entire medium is \( p \) (and constant), then balance is achieved if \( p = k_u u L \), indicating that the concentration, \( u \), is inversely proportional to the size of the medium \( u = p / k_u L \).

![Figure 2-12: Profile of \( v \) for two different medium size and scaling factor.](image)

In our simulations, we chose the values for these parameters: \( D_u = 10, D_v = 1, k_u = 0.005, k_v = 1, v_0 = 1 \) and \( j_v = 0 \) for two different medium sizes \( L = 1 \) and \( L = 2 \). **A**: The continuous curve is for \( L = 1 \) and the dotted curve is for \( L = 2 \). **B**: The scaling factor is zero everywhere since the two profiles have the same concentration everywhere.

### 2.5 Scaling of exponential profile (mechanism 2)

Assume that we have a domain of size \( L \) where the morphogen with concentration \( u \) is produced and diffusing. Furthermore, assume that there is a region of size \( a \) in the middle of this domain where the morphogen decays. This setting can be illustrated by Figure 2-13 and modelled by the following equation:

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k(x) u + p \quad \text{where} \quad k(x) = \begin{cases} k_u & \text{for} \quad \frac{L-a}{2} < x < \frac{L+a}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}
\]

with the following boundary conditions:

\[
\left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right|_{x=0} = \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right|_{x=L} = 0.
\]

Here \( D_u \) represents diffusion coefficient, \( p \) the production rate and \( k_u \) decay rate.
Figure 2-13: Domain with production and decay in the middle.

**Region 1:** Domain where the morphogen with concentration \( u \) is produced with rate \( p \) and diffusing. **Region 2:** Domain where the morphogen is decaying with rate \( k_u \).

The analytical solution of \( u(x) \) is represented in three parts:

\[
u(x) = \begin{cases} 
\frac{x^2}{2D_u} - \frac{(L-a)(2+e^{-\lambda x} + e^{\lambda x})}{2\lambda D_u(e^{-\lambda x} - e^{\lambda x})} + \frac{1}{k_u} + \frac{(L-a)^2}{8D_u} & \text{for } x < \frac{L-a}{2} \\
\frac{(L-a)\left(e^{-2\lambda x} + e^{2\lambda x}\right)(e^{\lambda x} + e^{\lambda(L-x)})}{2\lambda D_u(e^{\lambda x} - e^{-\lambda x})} + \frac{1}{k_u} & \text{for } \frac{L-a}{2} < x < \frac{L+a}{2} \\
\frac{x^2}{2D_u} + \frac{Lx}{D_u} - \frac{(L-a)(2+e^{-\lambda x} + e^{\lambda x})}{2\lambda D_u(e^{-\lambda x} - e^{\lambda x})} + \frac{1}{k_u} + \frac{(L+a)^2}{8D_u} - \frac{L(L+a)}{2D_u} & \text{for } x > \frac{L+a}{2}
\end{cases}
\]

(2-23)

where \( \lambda = (k_u/D_u)^{1/2} \). For full derivation see Appendix D.

For large diffusion coefficient \( D_u \), the solution can be approximated (see Appendix D) as

\[
u = \frac{pL}{ak_u},
\]

which indicates that fast diffusion results to levelling up of the morphogen over the entire domain so that its level is proportional to the size of the domain.

Now let us consider another morphogen whose dynamics is given by the following equation:

\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} - k_v \frac{v}{u^2}, \quad (2-24)
\]

with the following boundary conditions:
\[ v(x = 0) = v_0, \quad \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = j_v, \]

where \( v_0 \) is the boundary value at \( x=0 \) and \( j_v \) is the boundary flux at \( x=L \). For the decay term, we chose the ratio of \( v \) and \( u^2 \) to see if scaling occurs for \( v \), because of the approximation of \( u \). Although the plots of \( u \)-profiles can be done using analytical solution for \( u \) (see (2-23)) in order to see \( v \)-profiles we had to numerically integrate equations (2-24). The plots of \( u \) and \( v \) from simulations are shown in Figure 2-14.

![Figure 2-14: u- and v-profiles from numerical integration of equations (2-23) and (2-24). Profiles (the red and blue curves stand for \( u \) and \( v \) profiles respectively) are presented for two different medium sizes (\( L=1 \), solid line and \( L=2 \) dashed line) and two different values of \( D_u \) (\( D_u=1 \) on panel A and \( D_u=0.01 \) in panel B). Values for other model parameters: \( D_v=1 \), \( k_v=1 \), \( p=0.01 \), \( k_u=0.5 \), \( v_0=1 \) and \( j_v=0 \), for two different medium sizes \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \). In panel A, we see that the \( u \)-profile is constant but in panel B, the \( u \)-profile is not constant.

For both plots in Figure 2-14, we have calculated the scaling factor numerically using our formula (2-4). The \( v \)-profile scales perfectly for the case \( D_u=1 \): the scaling factor calculated for this case does not exceed 0.1. But for the case \( D_u=0.01 \), its scaling factor increases rapidly to 10. Hence this is much worse compared to the scaling factor with \( D_u=1 \).

### 2.6 Scaling of morphogen in annihilation model

In section 1.9.1, we have dealt with scaling involving two morphogens which are expressed in opposite sides of the embryo. In this model, \( u \) and \( v \) can be seen as representing Bicoid and Nanos profiles in fly embryo respectively. We already know that only \( s_+ \) can scale. We can deduce the expression of \( u \) and \( v \) using the facts that \( s_+ \) (see equation (1-26)) is the sum of \( u \) and \( v \) and \( s_- \) (see equation (1-25)) is the difference between \( u \) and \( v \). The formulae of \( s_+ \) and
$s_-$ in terms of $u$ and $v$ are given as $s_+ = u + v$ and $s_- = u - v$. The expressions of $u$ and $v$ can be obtained by adding and subtracting the two equations respectively.

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{align*}
\Rightarrow 2u &= s_+ + s_- \Rightarrow u = \frac{1}{2}(s_+ + s_-) \\
\Rightarrow 2v &= s_+ - s_- \Rightarrow v = \frac{1}{2}(s_+ - s_-).
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\]

Therefore the full expressions of $u$ and $v$ are

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) + \frac{4}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) &\left( 1 - 2\xi \right)^2 \frac{\lambda^2 L u_0^2}{96} &\left( 1 - 2\xi \right)^4 + u_0 \left( 1 - 2\xi \right) \\
\frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) &\left( 1 - 2\xi \right)^2 &\frac{\lambda^2 L u_0^2}{96} &\left( 1 - 2\xi \right)^4 - u_0 \left( 1 - 2\xi \right).
\end{align*}
\]

where $\xi = x/L$. Assume that $\lambda^2 = k/D << 1$, then the first term and the coefficient of $(1-2\xi)^2$ of the solution $u$ inside the bracket, in equation (2-25), can be approximated using the binomial distribution.

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + 1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{8} \right) = u_0 \\
\frac{4}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right)^2 = \frac{4}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( -1 + 1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{8} \right)^2 = \frac{4}{\lambda^2 L^2} &\left( \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^4}{64} \right) = \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{16}.
\end{align*}
\]

So far $u$ is approximated by

\[
\begin{align*}
u_0 = \frac{1}{2} &\left( u_0 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{16} \left( 1 - 2\xi \right) - \frac{\lambda^2 L u_0^2}{96} \left( 1 - 2\xi \right)^4 + u_0 \left( 1 - 2\xi \right) \right).
\end{align*}
\]

As $\lambda$ is small we can neglect the second and the third terms and therefore $u$ is approximated by

\[
\begin{align*}
u_0 = \frac{1}{2} \left( u_0 + u_0 \left( 1 - 2\xi \right) \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( 2u_0 - 2u_0 \xi \right) = u_0 \left( 1 - \xi \right).
\end{align*}
\]

The solution of $v$ in equation (2-26) can be approximated similarly to the solution of $u$. Therefore $v$ can be approximated by
\[ v = \frac{1}{2} \left( u_0 - u_0 (1 - 2\xi) \right) = \frac{1}{2} (2u_0\xi) = u_0\xi. \]  

(2-28)

\( u_0 \) in (2-27) and (2-28) is a constant. We see that \( u \) and \( v \) are independent of \( L \). Hence, the scaling factor will be zero for both approximations. The plots of equation (2-27) and its scaling factor are shown in Figure 2-15.

**Figure 2-15: Plots for the annihilation model and scaling factor.**

In our simulations, we use \( k=10^{-5} \) and \( D=u_0=1 \). **A:** The continuous blue profile is for the case when \( L=1 \) and the red dotted profile is for the case when \( L=2 \). **B:** The scaling factor is 0 everywhere since in panel **A**, we have two linear profiles.

### 2.7 Scaling of nuclear trapping model

Scaling of Bicoid gradient in *Drosophila* embryo is well established experimental fact (Gregor, McGregor et al. 2008). Formations of Bicoid gradient have been addressed in a number of modelling studies (Grimm, Coppey et al. 2010). Its exponential profile can be easy modelled and the real challenge is to construct a model which shows scaling. It is known that part of Bicoid molecules is located in the syncytium and freely diffuse, while another part is bounded by the nuclei. The only hypothesis concerning the scaling of Bicoid gradient is related to the predominant degradation of Bicoid in nuclei compared to the degradation in syncytium (Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005). This hypothesis can be checked using the modification of so-called nuclear trapping model (Coppey, Berezhkovskii et al. 2007, de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010) which described the dynamics of free and bound Bicoid in the embryo (see Figure 2-16).
Figure 2-16 A: Nuclear trapping model (Coppey, Berezhkovskii et al. 2007). Bicoid exists in two states: freely diffusing and immobile/nuclear bound. The forward nuclear trapping rate constant \( k_+ \) is proportional to the nuclear density. B: Experimentally measured concentrations of free (red) and bound (blue and green) Bicoid from (Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005).

The fly embryo has a shape of ellipsoid (Xiaojing, Chung-Chu et al. 2005, Levario, Zhan et al. 2013). All the nuclei in the embryo are located near the surface of the embryo in a layer called syncytium. Bicoid molecules are produced at the anterior pole of the embryo and diffuse along the syncytium (Alberts, Johnson et al. 2002). These molecules are also captured by nuclei so that there are two fractions of Bicoid: free \( u \), which is moving with diffusivity \( D \) in syncytium, and bound \( v \), where it is confined to the nucleus and can be considered immobile. The transitions between the free and bound states are modelled by first order processes with the rate constants \( k_+ \) and \( k_- \), the original equation of the model can be found in (Coppey, Berezhkovskii et al. 2007). We extend the model by adding terms counting for the degradation of Bicoid and by focusing on the stationary solution of the system

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= D \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - u k_u - \rho (uk_1 - vk_2) \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= (uk_1 - vk_2) - v k_v,
\end{align*}
\]

where \( D \) defines the rate of free Bicoid diffusion, \( k_u \) and \( k_v \) are the degradation rates of free and bound Bicoid, \( k_1 \) and \( k_2 \) define the rate of nuclear trapping and release of Bicoid and \( \rho \) is the nuclei density (number of nuclei per unit length). The scaling in this model is possible because the total amount of nuclei, \( N \), in embryos of different sizes is the same at the same developmental stage. Furthermore, the nuclei are located in the thin (two-dimensional)
syncytium covering the embryo and therefore their density is reverse proportional to the square length of the embryo, \( \rho = N/L^2 \). These equations can be considered under different boundary conditions. For the mixed boundary conditions \( u(x=0)=1 \) and \( u'(x=L)=0 \), where \( u(x=0)=1 \) counts for the production of Bicoid in the apical side of the embryo, the stationary solution of \( u(x) \) is given by

\[
 u(x) = \frac{e^{(x-L)\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{(L-x)\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}},
\]

which can be approximated as (see Appendix E for full derivation)

\[
 u \approx e^{-\frac{L^2 k^2}{D} \frac{N k_1}{D(k_2 + k_1)}}, \tag{2-29}
\]

The above approximation depends on both \( \xi \) and \( L \). If the first term under the square root of solution (2-29) is smaller than the second one then the solution would scale.

Figure 2-17: Profiles for mixed boundary conditions for two different medium sizes and their scaling factor.

The following parameters values are used: \( D=10 \), \( k_2=2 \), \( k_v=0.5 \) and \( N=k_1=\rho =1 \). A: Continuous and dotted profiles are for \( L=1 \) and \( L=2 \) respectively for the mixed boundary condition. The blue, red and green profiles are for \( k_u=0.1 \), 0.01 and 0.001 respectively. B: Scaling factor for the mixed boundary condition. The blue, red and green profiles are for \( k_u =0.1 \), 0.01 and 0.001 respectively. The blue curve shows that it has the worst scaling out of all three. The red curve has better scaling factor than the blue curve but it has a worse scaling factor compared to the green curve. The scaling factor of the green profile has the best scaling factor out of all three since its scaling factor tends to zero.

For the Neumann’s boundary conditions \( u(x=0)'=-\gamma \) and \( u(x=L)'=0 \), the stationary solution of \( u(x) \) is given by
The above solution can be approximated as (see Appendix F for full derivation)

\[
    u(x) \approx L \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left( e^{\gamma - \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{\beta}} x} + e^{-\frac{\beta}{\sqrt{\beta}} x} \right).
\]

\[
    u \approx L \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} e^{-\frac{\xi}{\sqrt{\beta}} x} \left( \frac{k_u}{D} L^2 + \frac{N k_u k_v}{D (k_2 + k_v)} \right). \tag{2-30}
\]

The above approximation depends on both \( \xi \) and \( L \). We have two possible scenarios both not permitting the scaling of the \( u \)-profile. Indeed, if the first term under the square root of the solution (2-30) is smaller than the second term then the exponential would scale but not the coefficient since it depends on \( L \). If the second term under the square root is smaller compared to the first one, then the coefficient of the exponential term would scale but not the exponential itself. Therefore the solution cannot scale in opposition to Umulis (Umulis 2009) since he claimed that this solution would scale. In equation (2-29) and (2-30), \( \beta = (k_u (k_2 + k_v) + \rho k_v k_u)/(D (k_2 + k_v)) \) and \( \xi = x/L \). In order to check for scaling, \( k_u \) should be a very small number. We perform simulations for two different mediums sizes for the mixed boundary condition. The results are shown in Figure 2-17.

### 2.8 Scaling in a system with active transport

To explore other mechanisms of scaling we can assume that all nuclei are connected by microtubules which can enforce active Bicoid transportation which can be predominantly oriented in the anterior-to-posterior direction. This is highly hypothetical statement but we can show that it leads to the scaling of gradient even if don’t consider nuclear trapping. The active transportation is mathematically represented by an advection term, so that the Bicoid concentration, \( c \), can be described by the modification of the equation in Figure 1-9:

\[
    D \frac{d^2 c}{dx^2} + s \rho \frac{dc}{dx} - kc = 0; \quad c(x = 0) = 1; \quad \frac{dc}{dx} (x = L) = 0. \tag{2-31}
\]

Here parameter \( s \) defines the strength of Bicoid flow due to the active transportation. Since we are interested in a flow along the anterio-posterior axis, the nuclei density is considered
only in this direction and therefore it is inverse proportional to the size of the embryo: \( \rho = \frac{N}{L} \).

The solution of the equation (2-31) is approximated by the exponent:

\[
c = e^{-\frac{z}{(\alpha + \sqrt{\alpha^2 + \beta})}},
\]

(2-32)

where \( \alpha = sN/2D \) and \( \beta = kL^2/D \). The above solution (2-32) scales with the size of embryo if the rate of Bicoid transportation is high compared to its degradation rate. If \( \alpha \) is positive then the active transport is directed to the left. If \( \alpha \) is negative then the active transport is directed to the right. We can only have scaling for the case with \( \alpha \) positive, that is, when the advection flow is directed against the diffusive flow and points towards the source emitting the morphogen. The plot of solution (2-32) is shown in Figure 2-18.

![Figure 2-18. Profiles for mixed boundary conditions for two different medium sizes and their scaling factor in active transport model.](image)

We choose \( D = k = 1 \). **A:** Continuous and dotted profiles are for \( L = 1 \) and \( L = 2 \) respectively for the mixed boundary condition. The blue, red and green profiles are for \( \alpha = 1, 2 \) and 5 respectively. **B:** Scaling factor for the mixed boundary condition. The blue, red and green profiles are for for \( \alpha = 1, 2 \) and 5 respectively. The blue curve shows that it has the worst scaling out of all three. The red curve has better scaling factor than the blue curve but it has a worse scaling factor compared to the green curve. The scaling factor of the green profile has the best scaling factor out of all three since its scaling factor tends to zero.

### 2.9 Summary

The aim of this chapter was to design a model such that its solution can be represented by an exponential function which scales with the medium size. We have also developed a tool which allows to measure robustness and scaling. Scaling is a particular case of robustness. We have introduced our definition of scaling factor and tested it throughout this chapter. We have testing our scaling factor for two simple cases. The first case was a linear profile and the second case was an exponential profile. We have noticed the linear profile will always scale...
no matter what the size of the medium is. However, the exponential profile generally doesn’t scale. We have considered the one-variable model with all boundary conditions. We saw that the solution can scale under the Dirichlet boundary condition. This is getting closer to the French flag model. For the case of Neumann boundary condition, the solution doesn’t scale at all. But we can use the latter result for our two mechanisms of scaling of exponential profile. In these two models, the morphogen $u$ could represent a hypothetical morphogene while $v$ could reflect the bicoid concentration profile in fly oocyte. These two mechanisms can illustrate the scenario where the bioid protein diffuse posteriorly forming a protein gradient. Bicoid is not only the only maternal genes for early patterning. Nanos is another maternal gene which is located at the posterior pole ($x=L$). It diffuses anteriorly. The annihilation model in section 2.6 allowed us to illustrate this phenomenon. We have also shown that solutions for nuclear trapping model and active transport model can exhibit good scaling properties for the mixed boundary condition. The fact that we have Dirichlet boundary condition on one side, in all our models, allows us to have scaling. In this chapter, we had good scaling with only one assumption compared to (Ben-Zvi and Barkai 2010). Our assumption was if the degradation rate of one morphogen is much smaller the diffusion coefficient, then this morphogen will diffuse faster and this enables a second morphogen to have its concentration scaled across the profile.
Chapter 3  Scaling of Turing patterns

In the first chapter, we have seen that the solutions of Turing and FHN models do not scale similarly to exponential solutions of diffusion/decay model. In the second chapter we have introduced a few modifications of diffusion/decay models such that their solutions are represented by exponential profiles having good scaling properties. The objective of this chapter is to modify Turing and FHN models to allow scaling properties for solutions of new models. This could be seen as mathematical representation of the fact that the patterning (number of stripe) remains the same for two individual of the same species. The spatial positions of these stripes depend on the concentration of morphogens. The Turing’s model is a prototype model commonly used for illustration of stationary patterns appearing in inhibitor/activator systems. The second one is the Fitzhugh-Nagumo model which is used for illustration of formation of excitation waves in inhibitor/activator systems. We will analyse the link between these two models and show that Turing’s model can be transformed into modification of FitzHugh–Nagumo model and also, we want see if scaling occurs using our formula (2-4).

We start with section 3.1 by discussing the original Turing model. We shall, in section 3.2, discuss about our extended Turing’s model. In section 3.3 and 3.4, we shall investigate the effects of the medium size and the diffusion of the inhibitor on the number of stripes. The stripes are used to characterise patterns. The three-variable Turing’s model will be deal in section 3.5. In this section, we also test the scaling problem. In section 3.6 we move on to the standard Fitzhugh-Nagumo model. Section 3.7 will be about the conversion of the Turing model to the Fitzhugh-Nagumo model. The three-variable FHN model will be dealt in section 3.8. We also test the scaling formula for this model.

3.1 Turing instability in the linear model

Let us find out conditions for existence of Turing instability for the following system (see (3-1)).

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
\dot{u} \\
\dot{v}
\end{pmatrix} = A \begin{pmatrix}
u \\
v
\end{pmatrix}
\]

where \( A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \),

(3-1)
where a, b, c and d are real constants. The nullclines are determined by equating the LHS to zero of (3-1). Hence, we have two straight nullclines

\[ v = -\frac{a}{b} u \quad \text{for} \quad \dot{u} = 0 \]  
\[ v = -\frac{c}{d} u \quad \text{for} \quad \dot{v} = 0. \]  

The first nullcline in (3-2) is for the case when \( \dot{u} dt = 0 \) and the second one is for the case when \( \dot{v} dt = 0 \). The equilibrium point is at the origin and for its stability we require that the \( \text{trace} = a + d < 0 \) and the \( \text{determinant} = ad - bc > 0 \). In total, we have six cases for stability. These cases can be defined as the following. Assume that \( a > 0 \). Then \( d < 0 \), such that \( |a| < |d| \), to satisfy \( \text{trace} < 0 \). Hence, it follows that if \( b < 0 \) then \( c > 0 \) or other way around to satisfy \( \text{determinant} > 0 \). Thus, the first two cases are:

1. \( a > 0, d < 0, b < 0 \) and \( c > 0 \) or
2. \( a > 0, d < 0, b > 0 \) and \( c < 0 \).

Now assume that \( a < 0 \). To satisfy \( \text{trace} < 0 \), we need \( d < 0 \). Hence, it follows that if \( b < 0 \) then \( c > 0 \) or other way around to satisfy \( \text{determinant} > 0 \). Thus the next two cases are:

3. \( a < 0, d < 0, b > 0 \) and \( c < 0 \) or
4. \( a < 0, d < 0, b < 0 \) and \( c > 0 \).

The \( \text{trace} < 0 \) by assuming that \( a < 0 \) and \( d > 0 \) provided that \( |a| > |d| \). Hence, it follows that if \( b < 0 \) then \( c > 0 \) or other way around to satisfy \( \text{determinant} > 0 \). Thus the last two cases are:

5. \( a < 0, d > 0, b > 0 \) and \( c < 0 \) or
6. \( a < 0, d > 0, b > 0 \) and \( c < 0 \).

Let’s consider the first case, \( a > 0, d < 0, b < 0 \) and \( c > 0 \). The trace is already satisfied since the parameters \( a \) and \( d \) are of opposite signs. We check the case of the determinant.

\[ ad - bc > 0 \]
\[ ad > bc. \]

We shall divide by \( b \) on both sides. Since \( b \) is negative, the sign of the inequality will change.
\[
\frac{ad}{b} < c.
\]
Next we shall divide by \(d\) on both sides. Again, since \(d\) is negative, the sign of the inequality will change again.

\[
\frac{a}{b} > \frac{c}{d}.
\]
We shall multiply by \(-1\) on both sides.

\[
-\frac{a}{b} < -\frac{c}{d}.
\]
As we can see, in order to have stability, the slope of \(du/dt=0\), \(-ab\) is less than the slope of \(dv/dt=0\), \(-c/d\).

Now, let’s consider the reaction-diffusion system.

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \gamma_1 (au + bv)
\]
\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \gamma_2 (cu + dv),
\]
where \(D_u, D_v\) are the diffusion coefficients of \(u\) and \(v\) respectively. Any solutions \(u(x, t)\) and \(v(x, t)\) can be represented as a superposition of functions

\[
u_k (x, t) = f_k (t) g_k (x) = \hat{u}(t) \cos(kx)
\]
\[
u_k (x, t) = f_k (t) g_k (x) = \hat{v}(t) \cos(kx).
\]
By substituting these two expressions into the systems we obtain

\[
\frac{\partial \hat{u}}{\partial t} = -k^2 D_u \hat{u} + \gamma_1 (a\hat{u} + b\hat{v})
\]
\[
\frac{\partial \hat{v}}{\partial t} = -k^2 D_v \hat{v} + \gamma_2 (c\hat{u} + d\hat{v}).
\]
We can determine the two nullclines by equating \(\partial \hat{u} / \partial t\) and \(\partial \hat{v} / \partial t\) to 0.

\[
-k^2 D_u \hat{u} + \gamma_1 (a\hat{u} + b\hat{v}) = 0
\]
\[
-k^2 D_v \hat{v} + \gamma_2 (c\hat{u} + d\hat{v}) = 0.
\]
From the above equations, we can write $\hat{v}$ as a function of $\hat{u}$.

$$\hat{v} = \frac{k^2 D_u - a \gamma_1}{b \gamma_1} \hat{u} \quad (3-3)$$

$$\hat{v} = \frac{c \gamma_2}{k^2 D_v - d \gamma_2} \hat{u} \quad (3-4)$$

The first nullcline, (3-3), is for the case when $\frac{du}{dt} = 0$ and the second one, (3-4), is for the case when $\frac{dv}{dt} = 0$. The parameters $a$, $b$, $c$, $d$, $D_u$, $D_v$, $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$ have arbitrary values. Since we have diffusion terms, we will have instability. The range of the parameter $k^2$ which gives instability is the solution of the inequality below.

$$\frac{k^2 D_u - a \gamma_1}{b \gamma_1} > \frac{c \gamma_2}{k^2 D_v - d \gamma_2}.$$ 

This can be written as

$$k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 (a \gamma_1 D_v + d \gamma_2 D_u) + \gamma_1 \gamma_2 (ad - bc) < 0.$$ 

The critical points of $k^2$ are the solution of the quartic equation

$$k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 (a \gamma_1 D_v + d \gamma_2 D_u) + \gamma_1 \gamma_2 (ad - bc) = 0.$$ 

They are given by

$$k^2_{1,2} = \frac{a \gamma_1 D_v + d \gamma_2 D_u \pm \sqrt{(a \gamma_1 D_v + d \gamma_2 D_u)^2 - 4 D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 (ad - bc)}}{2 D_u D_v}.$$ 

Now, we shall consider these different cases.

**Case 1.** $a > 0$, $d < 0$, $b < 0$ and $c > 0$.

The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability ($-a/b < -c/d$). On the right, the slopes intersect at two points called instability critical points. The unstable region is between the two points (see Figure 3-1).
Case 2. $a>0$, $d<0$, $b>0$ and $c<0$.

The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability ($-ab>-cd$). On the right, the slopes intersect at two points called instability critical points. The instability occurs between the two points (see Figure 3-2).

**Figure 3-1: Phase portrait for case 1.**

*Figure 3-1: Phase portrait for case 1.*

A: The $u$ and $v$ nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows represent the phase trajectory.

B: Slopes of $\dot{u} = 0$ and $\dot{v} = 0$ versus $k^2$ for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing $\cos(kx)$.

**Figure 3-2: Phase portrait for case 2.**

*Figure 3-2: Phase portrait for case 2.*

A: The $u$ and $v$ nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows represent the phase trajectory.

B: Slopes of $\dot{u} = 0$ and $\dot{v} = 0$ versus $k^2$ for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing $\cos(kx)$. 
Case 3. \(a<0, \ d<0, \ b<0\) and \(c>0\).

The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability \((-ab<-c/d)\). The graph on the right shows that the two slopes don’t intersect. Therefore, it will always remain stable (see Figure 3-3).

![Figure 3-3: Phase portrait for case 3.](image)

A: The \(u\) and \(v\) nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows respresents the phase trajectory.

B: Slopes of \(\dot{u} = 0\) and \(\dot{v} = 0\) versus \(k^2\) for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing \(\cos(kx)\).

Case 4. \(a<0, \ d<0, \ b>0\) and \(c<0\).

![Figure 3-4: Phase portrait for case 4.](image)

A: The \(u\) and \(v\) nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows respresents the phase trajectory.

B: Slopes of \(\dot{u} = 0\) and \(\dot{v} = 0\) versus \(k^2\) for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing \(\cos(kx)\).
The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability. The relative position of the two slopes \((-alb<-cld)\). The graph on the right shows that the two slopes don’t intersect. Therefore, it will always be stable (see Figure 3-4).

![Figure 3-5: Phase portrait for case 5.](image)

**A:** The \(u\) and \(v\) nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows represents the phase trajectory.

**B:** Slopes of \(\dot{u} = 0\) and \(\dot{v} = 0\) versus \(k^2\) for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing \(\cos(kx)\).

**Case 5.** \(a<0, d>0, b>0\) and \(c<0\).

The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability \((-alb<-cld)\). The graph on the right shows that the two slopes don’t intersect. Therefore, it will always be stable (see Figure 3-5).

![Figure 3-6: Phase portrait for case 6.](image)

**A:** The \(u\) and \(v\) nullclines are represented by the blue and green lines respectively for the system with no diffusion. The arrows represents the phase trajectory.

**B:** slopes of \(\dot{u} = 0\) and \(\dot{v} = 0\) versus \(k^2\) for harmonic solutions of the system (3-3) and (3-4) containing \(\cos(kx)\).
Case 6. \(a<0, \, d>0, \, b<0\) and \(c>0\).

The graph on the left below shows a phase portrait without diffusion. This represents the stability \((-\frac{a}{b} > -\frac{c}{d})\). The graph on the right shows that the two slopes don’t intersect. Therefore, it will always be stable (see Figure 3-6).

In order to analyse the linear model, we will need to consider six cases when the model is stable. Cases 1 and 2 give Turing instability. The other four cases will always be stable. For case 1, \(u\) is called the activator because it is responsible for production of \(v\) and \(v\) is called inhibitor because it is involved in the decay of \(u\). Case 2 describes the kinetics which is not directly associate with known interactions of biochemical substances (Murray 2003).

3.2 Turing instability in the model extended with cubic terms

In the linear model the concentrations \(u\) and \(v\) tend to the infinity with time. To avoid this, we extend the linear model (3-1) by adding cubic terms for both equations with coefficients \(\alpha_u\) and \(\alpha_v\).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \gamma_1 (au + bv) - \alpha_u u^3; \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0 \tag{3-5} \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \gamma_2 (cu + dv) - \alpha_v v^3; \quad \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0, \tag{3-6}
\end{align*}
\]

where \(D_u, \, D_v\) are the diffusion coefficients of \(u\) and \(v\) respectively, \(a, \, b, \, c, \, d\) are constant parameters and \(\gamma_1\) and \(\gamma_2\) are parameters which we can change to see how many stripes can have unstable modes in a medium of a given size.

Figure 3-7 shows the nullcline of the system (3-5) and (3-6). Panels A and B show the cases with \(\alpha_u=0\). Panel A has one equilibrium point which is stable. Panel B is similar to panel A except that it has three equilibrium points. The origin is unstable and the other two are stable. Panels C and D show the cases with \(\alpha_v=0\). The parameter \(\alpha_v\) in these two panels is negative otherwise we will never get the two extra equilibrium points. Panel C has one equilibrium point which is stable. Panel D is similar to panel C except that it has three equilibrium points. The origin is unstable and the other two are stable. In panels B and D, as the origin is unstable, the direction fields around the origin will be repelled. But since we have two stable
equilibrium points, the phase trajectories which are repelled from the origin will be attracted to these two stable equilibrium points. But since we have two stable equilibrium points, the direction fields which are repelled from the origin will be attracted to these two stable equilibrium points. They will prevent the direction field to go to infinity. That’s why, we choose cubic terms. For the case with square terms, there are only two equilibrium points. One of them is stable and the other is unstable. The direction fields at the unstable point will be repelled and they will be attracted to the stable equilibrium point. But since we only have one stable equilibrium point some direction fields will go to $\infty$. That’s why, we don’t consider square terms. The same argument applies for the general case $u^{2n}$ where $n$ is positive.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{nullclines.png}
\caption{Cubic and linear nullclines of the system (3-5) and (3-6). The two top panels (A and B) are for the case with $\alpha_u=0.1$ and $\alpha_v=0$. A: Both nullclines with $k=0$. B: Both nullclines for $k=0.5$. The two bottom panels (C and D) are for the case with $\alpha_u=0$ and $\alpha_v=-0.1$. C: Both nullclines when $k=0$. D: Both nullclines for $k=0.5$. Values of model parameters are as follows: $a=1$, $b=-2$, $c=3$, $d=-4$, $D_u=1$ and $D_v=20$.}
\end{figure}
3.3 Effect of the size of the medium on the number of stripes

Many unstable special modes can exist in the same system (Murray 2003). In section 1.7.3, the condition to allow Turing’s instability has been shown by condition (1-12). By applying the results obtained in section 1.7.3 to our model defined by (3-5) and (3-6), the two bounds $k_1^2$ and $k_2^2$ are given by

$$k_{1,2}^2 = \frac{a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v \pm \sqrt{(a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v)^2 - 4D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \det}}{2D_u D_v},$$

where $\det=ad-bc$. The range of square wavenumber $k^2$ corresponding to Turing’s instability is

$$k_1^2 < k^2 < k_2^2.$$

Using the expression of $k_1^2$ and $k_2^2$, we obtain

$$a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v - \sqrt{(a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v)^2 - 4D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \det} < k^2 <$$

$$< a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v + \sqrt{(a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v)^2 - 4D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \det}.$$

Since $k$ is the wavenumber, it can be written as $k=n\pi L$ where $n$ is the number of stripes. By substituting $k=n\pi L$ into the above inequality and after rearranging, we get

$$\sqrt{\frac{a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v - \sqrt{(a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v)^2 - 4D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \det}}{2D_u D_v}} < n <$$

$$< \frac{L}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v + \sqrt{(a\gamma_1 D_u + d\gamma_2 D_v)^2 - 4D_u D_v \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \det}}{2D_u D_v}}.$$

Our first investigation consists of assessing the effect of the medium size on the number of stripes. To do so, we fix $a, b, c, d, D_u$ and $D_v$. For each set of value of $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$, the range of number of stripes $n$ is given by (3-8)
\[
\frac{L}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{20\gamma_1 - 4\gamma_2 - \sqrt{(20\gamma_1 - 4\gamma_2)^2 - 160\gamma_1\gamma_2}}{40}} < n < \frac{L}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{20\gamma_1 - 4\gamma_2 + \sqrt{(20\gamma_1 - 4\gamma_2)^2 - 160\gamma_1\gamma_2}}{40}}.
\]

(3-8)

**Figure 3-8:** Graph showing the effect of the medium size L on the number of stripes for four different sets of values of $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$.

Each horizontal line between red and blue lines corresponds to a pattern of different special periodicity. The blue and the red lines correspond respectively to the left and right hand side of (3-8). These graphs are obtained with the following parameter values: $a=1$, $b=-2$, $c=3$, $d=-4$, $D_u=1$, $D_v=20$, $\alpha_u=0.1$ and $\alpha_v=-0.1$. **A:** $\gamma_1=\gamma_2=0.06$. **B:** $\gamma_1=\gamma_2=0.04$. **C:** $\gamma_1=0.053$ and $\gamma_2=0.04$. **D:** $\gamma_1=0.04$ and $\gamma_2=0.053$.

From (3-8), the two bounds of the number of stripes are linear functions with respect to $L$. The plots of bounds defined by the left and right hand side of inequality (3-8) for different set of values of $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$, are shown in Figure 3-8.

Consider the case with both $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$ equal to 0.06. If we take for example $L=140$, several possibilities of number of stripes can occur (2.5 to 4 stripes) (see Figure 3-8 in panel A). If we decrease the value of both $\gamma_1$ are $\gamma_2$ to 0.04, the two curves get closer and the number of stripes, for $L=140$, is reduced (see Figure 3-8 in panel B). For this case it can be between 2 and 3.5 stripes. Next, the value of $\gamma_1$ is increased to 0.053 and $\gamma_2$ remains fixed to 0.04. The two curves are getting away for each other. For this case the number of possible stripes increases (see Figure 3-8 in Panel C). In the last panel, if we swap the values of $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_2$, the
two curves get much closer. We can only get one possible number of stripes. For \( L = 160 \), we can only have 2.5 stripes (see Figure 3-8 panel D). We are particularly interested in panel D because for some medium size, it can only have one possibility. This is shown by the graph below (see Figure 3-9). No matter how many locations we stimulate, we will always get the same number of stripes. This panel is particularly useful for scaling. For example if in a small medium we have two stripes and in a bigger medium we either have two or three stripes. Then scaling might not be obvious. On the other hand, if we only have two stripes in a small and big medium then scaling will occur.

\[ \text{Figure 3-9: Case of a unique unstable mode.} \]

By varying the model parameters it is possible to reduce the number of unstable modes (bringing the blue and red lines closer bounding the region of instability). \( A: \gamma_1 = 0.04 \) and \( \gamma_2 = 0.053 \). \( B: \) Effect of the size of the medium on the number of stripes. Any perturbation of homogenous state will always get the same plots.

### 3.4 Effect of the diffusion of the inhibitor on the number of stripes

We have previously investigated the effect of \( L \) on the number of stripes. By changing the values of \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \gamma_2 \), the blue and the red curves in Figure 3-9 get closer to each other. This has reduced the number of unstable modes.

Now, we examine the effect of the diffusion \( D_v \) of the inhibitor \( v \) on the number of stripes. To do so, we fix \( a, b, c, d, D_u, \alpha_v, \alpha_r, \gamma_1, \gamma_2 \) and \( L \). Their values are given below in Figure 3-10. The range of \( n \) given previously by (3-7) is written in terms of \( D_v \) as

\[
-140 \sqrt{\frac{0.04D_v - 0.16}{2D_v}} - \sqrt{(0.04D_v - 0.16)^2 - 0.0128D_v} < n < -140 \sqrt{\frac{0.04D_v - 0.16 + \sqrt{(0.04D_v - 0.16)^2 - 0.0128D_v}}{2D_v}}.
\]
The two limits of the range of $n$ in (3-9) are non-linear functions respect to $D_v$. Their plots are shown in Figure 3-10 (blue lower limit and red higher limit).

**Figure 3-10.** Graph showing the effect of the diffusion of inhibitor ($D_v$) on the number of stripes for $L=140$.

*The blue and the red curves are the lower and higher limits respectively. Simulations results are shown by green circles and purple crossings. The green circles indicate patterns with 2.5 stripes and the purple crossings - with 3 stripes. The following parameter values were used: $a=1$, $b=-2$, $c=3$, $d=-4$, $D_u=1$, $\alpha_u=0.1$, $\alpha_v=-0.1$ and $\gamma_1=\gamma_2=0.04$. For $D_v=15.2$, we will always have 2.5 stripes no matter where we stimulate. For $D_v=15.7$, one can either have 2.5 stripes or 3 stripes.*

### 3.5 Scaling of Turing patterns in the three-variable model

All of our simulations confirm that adding cubic terms prevent the concentration from going to infinity. Furthermore, our simulations confirmed the results from Figure 3-9 and Figure 3-10. Changing the values of $\alpha_u$ and $\alpha_v$ affects the amplitudes of the stripes. The smaller the values of both $\alpha_u$ and $\alpha_v$ are, the bigger the amplitudes of the stripes will be. We will use our model (3-5) and (3-6) to perform scaling like in sections 2.4 and 2.5. To introduce scaling into the Turing model, we extend it with a third variable $z$ satisfying the two following conditions:

1. $z$ is maintained at a constant level which depends on the size of the medium.

2. $z$ affects the kinetics rate of two original variables so that the space scaling of the pattern is proportional to the medium size.

The extended three-variable model is given by the set (3-10)
\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \left( \gamma (au + bv) - \alpha_u u^3 \right) z^2, \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \left( \gamma (cu + dv) - \alpha_v v^3 \right) z^2, \\
\frac{\partial z}{\partial t} = D_z \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - k_z z, \\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} = -j_0, \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = j_z,
\]

(3-10)

where \(D_u, D_v\) and \(D_z\) are the diffusion coefficients of \(u, v\) and \(z\) respectively, \(k_z\) defines the degradation rate of \(z\) and \(j_0\) and \(j_z\) specify the boundary fluxes of \(z\) at \(x=0\) and \(x=L\) respectively. The plots of all three variables are shown in Figure 3-11.

**Figure 3-11: Scaling of the three-variable Turing model for system (3-10).**
The blue curve represents the concentration \(u\), the red curve is for \(v\) and the green curve is for \(z\). These results are obtained with the following parameters: \(D_u=1, D_v=20, D_z=50, \gamma=0.2, k_z=0.00001, j_0=j_z=0.0001, a=1, b=-2, c=3, d=-4, \alpha_u=0.1\) and \(\alpha_v=-0.1\). A: Plot with \(L=1\). B: Plot with \(L=2\). The above graphs show patterns forming in the extended Turing model for the case of two different medium lengths \((L_2=2L_1)\). The concentration \(z\) is constant. The profiles of \(u\) and \(v\) are identical for these two medium sizes—indicating the perfect scaling.

**Figure 3-12: Scaling factor for \(u\)-profile from Figure 3-11 across the relative position \((\xi=x/L)\).
For both medium sizes, they have the same number of stripes (4.5 stripes) with the same magnitudes. Now, we want to determine the scaling factor, for $u$ for instance. Since there is no analytical formula for its scaling factor, we compute it numerically. The plot of the scaling factor of $u$ is shown in Figure 3-12.

This figure leads us to 2 remarks. First, the scaling factor is zero almost everywhere across the relative position ($\xi=x/L$) except at the boundaries ($\xi=0$ and $\xi=1$). At both ends, the zero-flux boundary condition has been applied. At $\xi=0$, the concentration does not change suddenly ($\partial u/\partial \xi=0$). This makes the denominator of the scaling factor to be zero. At the other end, $\xi=1$, similar argument can be applied. Second, there are crests at some points. This is because the derivative at these points is 0.

### 3.6 Fitzhugh-Nagumo model

All the analyses done so far are with the Turing model. Now, we consider the Fitzhugh-Nagumo model (FHN) without the diffusion term transfers into the following system of ODEs:

\[
\frac{du}{dt} = f(u,v) = -k_u(u-\alpha)(u-1) - v
\]

\[
\frac{dv}{dt} = g(u,v) = \epsilon(\epsilon u - v),
\]

where $k_u$ is the membrane conductance, $\alpha$ represents the threshold potential, $\epsilon$ specifies the recovery rate constant and $\epsilon$ is the positive slope of the $v$-nullcline. The system shows that, in the $(u, v)$ plane, we will have a cubic and linear nullclines. These are shown in Figure 3-13.

The only equilibrium point, in Figure 3-13, is the origin. We want to investigate the stability at this equilibrium point. To do so, we need to calculate the Jacobian matrix at this point. This is written as

\[
J = \begin{pmatrix}
f_u & f_v \\
g_u & g_v
\end{pmatrix},
\]

where the entries $f_u = -k_u\alpha$, $f_v = -1$, $g_u = l\epsilon$ and $g_v = -\epsilon$. The trace and the determinant, computed at the origin, are defined as
trace = f_u + g_v = -k_u \alpha - \varepsilon < 0
\det = f_u g_v - f_v g_u = k_u \alpha + l > 0.

Figure 3-13: The two nullclines of the FHN model describing excitable system on the (u, v) axis of system (3-11).
The blue curve is the cubic nullcline (du/dt=0). The green curve is the linear nullcline (dv/dt=0). For this case, \( \alpha = 0.05, \varepsilon = 0.05, k_u = 3 \) and \( l = 1 \).

This shows that the origin is stable. Now we modify the FHN model such that the equilibrium point (point of intersection between cubic and linear nullclines) is not at the origin. To do this, we added a term called \( up \) in the first kinetic term \( f(u, v) \). Furthermore we assume that there is only one equilibrium point, which can be ensured by either having a high value of \( l \) or sufficiently low value of \( k_u \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{du}{dt} &= f(u, v) = -k_u (u - \alpha) (u - 1) - v + up \\
\frac{dv}{dt} &= g(u, v) = \varepsilon (lu - v).
\end{align*}
\tag{3-12}
\]

The linear nullcline will be the same as in (3-11) but the cubic nullcline will be shifted up. The plots of these two nullclines of (3-12) are shown in Figure 3-14.

At the equilibrium point in Figure 3-14, the matrix \( J \) have the same three entries except for \( f_u \). This is because the value of \( f_u \) will be different at this equilibrium point. This matrix is as follows

\[
J = \begin{pmatrix} f_u & -1 \\ l \varepsilon & -\varepsilon \end{pmatrix}.
\]

The trace and the determinant are defined by
\[ trace = f_u - \varepsilon \]
\[ det = \varepsilon (l - f_u) . \]

In order to have stability, it is required

\[ f_u < \varepsilon \]
\[ l > f_u . \]

In the FHN model it is assumed that \( \varepsilon \) is very small: \( \varepsilon \ll l \). Hence we can conclude that the conditions for Turing instability is given by

\[ 0 < f_u < \varepsilon . \]

![Figure 3-14. The two nullclines of the FHN model describing an oscillatory system on the \((u, \nu)\) plane of system (3-12).](image)

The blue curve is the cubic nullcline, \((du/dt=0)\). The green curve is the linear nullcline, \((dv/dt=0)\). The equilibrium point is located between the minimum and the maximum of the cubic nullcline. This plot was obtained with \( \alpha = 0.05, \varepsilon = 0.05, k_u = 3, l = 1 \) and \( up = 0.15 \).

Now, we transform the FHN model (3-12) using the following change of variables

\[
\begin{align*}
  u &= \tilde{u} - u_0 \\
  \nu &= \tilde{\nu} - \nu_0 .
\end{align*}
\]

where \((u_0, \nu_0)\) is the equilibrium point of system (3-12) and \( \tilde{u} \) and \( \tilde{\nu} \) are the new variables axes. We substitute them into the equations (3-12).

\[
\begin{align*}
  \frac{d\tilde{u}}{dt} &= -k_u (\tilde{u} - u_0)(\tilde{u} - u_0 - \alpha)(\tilde{u} - u_0 - 1) - (\tilde{\nu} - \nu_0) + up \\
  \frac{d\tilde{\nu}}{dt} &= \varepsilon (l(\tilde{u} - u_0) - (\tilde{\nu} - \nu_0)) .
\end{align*}
\]
We can multiply out in the second equation.

\[
\frac{d\bar{v}}{dt} = \varepsilon (l\bar{u} - \bar{v}) - \varepsilon (lu_0 - v_0).
\]

From the above, we can deduce that \(lu_0 - v_0 = 0\). This is because there are no constant terms in the second equation of (3-12). Therefore, \(v_0 = lu_0\). From the first equation, we multiply out and collect terms containing power of \(\bar{u}\).

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{bmatrix}
u^3 \\
u^2 \\
u^1 \\
u^0
\end{bmatrix}
&= k_u = \alpha_u \\
&= k_u (1 + \alpha + 3u_0) = 0 \\
&= k_u (-u_0 (u_0 + \alpha) - (2u_0 + \alpha)(u_0 + 1)) = a \\
&= k_u u_0 (u_0 + \alpha)(u_0 + 1) + lu_0 + up = 0.
\end{align*}
\]

The first equation is trivial. From the second equation, we can determine the expression of \(\alpha\).

\[
\alpha = -(1 + 3u_0).
\]

The third equation says that the LHS is equal to \(a\) i.e. the kinetic term in (3-5). And the last equation says that the LHS is equal to 0. The considered modification of FHN model with no diffusions is equivalent to the Turing model (3-5) and (3-6) by taking the values of the following parameters as follows: \(a = f_u, b = -1, c = l\varepsilon, d = -\varepsilon, \gamma_1 = \gamma_2 = 1, \alpha_v = 0\) and \(\alpha_u = k_u\).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{du}{dt} &= au - v + \beta u^2 - \alpha_u u^3 \\
\frac{dv}{dt} &= cu + dv.
\end{align*}
\]

(3-13) \hspace{1cm} (3-14)

The above modification of the FHN models shows that we have a cubic and a linear nullcline in the \((u, v)\) plane. The two nullclines of (3-13) and (3-14) are plotted in Figure 3-15.

For the system without diffusions in (3-13) and (3-14), the Jacobian matrix \(A\) computed at the origin is given by

\[
A = \begin{pmatrix} a & -1 \\ \varepsilon & -\varepsilon \end{pmatrix}.
\]
The trace and the determinant are defined by

\[
\text{trace} = a - \varepsilon \\
\text{det} = \varepsilon (1 - a).
\]

The conditions required for stability are

\[
a < \varepsilon \\
a < 1.
\]

These can be assemble as \(a < \varepsilon << 1\) knowing that \(\varepsilon << 1\).

![Figure 3-15. The two nullclines of the converted Turing model to FHN model. The blue curve is the cubic nullcline \((du/dt=0)\). The green curve is the linear nullcline \((dv/dt=0)\). The plot was obtained with \(\alpha_u=0.1, a=0.5, b=-1, c=\varepsilon, d=-\varepsilon\) with \(\varepsilon=0.05\) and \(\beta=0.05\).](image)

### 3.7 Transition from oscillations to stripes

As a result of Turing instability stationary inhomogeneous solutions merge from stable homogeneous solutions. In the case of FHN model as we have shown in the previous section there can be observed oscillating solution. In order to have oscillating solution, we require that the trace and determinant are both positive i.e. \(f_u > \varepsilon \) and \(l > f_u\). Assuming that \(\varepsilon << l\), we can assemble these two conditions to \(\varepsilon < f_u < l\). To see if we have Turing’s patterns we add diffusion to the system (3-12). The full reaction-diffusion for FHN model is shown below (see (3-15))
\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k_u u (u - \alpha)(u - 1) - v + \epsilon
\]

\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \epsilon (lu - v).
\]

(3-15)

Both trace and determinant depend on the sign of \( f_u \). For the case of the determinant, it will remain positive no matter the sign of \( f_u \) is. For the case of the trace, the sign of \( f_u \) can have different scenarios. They are showed in Figure 3-16. First, if \( f_u < 0 \), then we will have nothing (blue region). Second, if \( f_u \) is between 0 and \( \epsilon \) shown in the orange region, we start with stable solution and in the presence of diffusions, we have the classical Turing instability. And last, the green region shows that \( f_u \) is greater than \( \epsilon \). In the absence of diffusion, we have oscillating solutions. In the presence of diffusion, we may have stripes.

![Graph (blue curve) showing relationship between trace and determinant when \( f_u \) is changed.](image)

*Figure 3-16. Graph (blue curve) showing relationship between trace and determinant when \( f_u \) is changed.*

The curve is represented by a linear function which is \( \text{det} = \epsilon(1 - \text{trace} - \epsilon) \). The red curves is represented by a parabola \( \text{det} = \text{trace}^2/4 \) separating regions with and without oscillations. For this plot, \( l=1 \) and \( \epsilon=0.1 \).

Instead of dealing with the standard FHN model (see (3-15)), we have decided to work with the modification of the FHN model (see (3-13) and (3-14)). In (3-13), we choose \( \beta=0 \). The full reaction-diffusion of this model is given as

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + au + bv - \alpha_u u^3
\]

\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + cu + dv,
\]

(3-16)

where \( D_u \) and \( D_v \) are the diffusion coefficients of \( u \) and \( v \) respectively and \( a, b, c, d \) and \( \alpha_u \) are constants. In Figure 3-16, we start from the second quadrant. By adding diffusions, we will
end up in the third quadrant. This is for the case of Turing model. For the case of FHN model, we start from the first quadrant. The addition of diffusions means that we may end up in the third quadrant. For the latter model, we did the following. For three values of \( D_v \) say 10, 20 and 30, we took a few values of \( k \) starting from \( k=0 \). For each value of \( k \), we compute the values of \( B(\kappa^2) \) (see (1-10)) and \( C(\kappa^2) \) (see (1-11)). Figure 3-17 shows that for \( k=0 \), we are in the first quadrant. For the case \( D_v=10 \), Turing’s instability doesn’t occur. This is because, there is no range of values of \( k \) which satisfies \( B(\kappa^2)<0 \) and \( C(\kappa^2)<0 \). For the case \( D_v=20 \), there is a small range of \( k \) which Turing’s instability occurs. And for the case \( D_v=30 \), there is a bigger of \( k \) which Turing patterns appear (Figure 3-17).

![Graph showing relationship between trace and determinant using (3-16)](image)

**Figure 3-17. Graph showing relationship between trace and determinant using (3-16)**

We use \( a=0.1, b=-1, c=\varepsilon, d=-\varepsilon, \varepsilon=0.05 \) and \( D_u=1 \). The blue, red and green curves are simulations for the cases when \( D_v=10, 20 \) and 30 respectively. The black curve is represented by a linear function which is \( \text{det} = \varepsilon(1-\text{trace}-\varepsilon) \). The black dotted curve represents \( \text{det} = \varepsilon^2/4 \). For the case when \( k=0 \), we are situated in the first quadrant.

As a reminder, the Jacobian matrix \( A \) computed at the origin using (3-13) and (3-14) is given by

\[
A = \begin{pmatrix} a & -1 \\ \varepsilon & -\varepsilon \end{pmatrix}.
\]

Now, we investigate the possibility to have oscillating solution in the absence of diffusion. We recall that without diffusion, the trace and the determinant of the Jacobian matrix are respectively

\[
\text{trace} = a - \varepsilon \\
\text{det} = \varepsilon(1-a).
\]
The case giving oscillatory solution requires that the trace and the determinant are both positive.

\[ \text{trace} = a - \epsilon > 0 \]
\[ \text{det} = \epsilon (1 - a) > 0. \]

These lead to the following conditions: \( \epsilon \ll a \) and \( a < 1 \). Assuming that \( \epsilon \ll 1 \), these can be combined as \( \epsilon \ll a \ll 1 \). In the presence of diffusions, the Jacobian matrix \( B \) is written as

\[
B = \begin{pmatrix}
    a - k^2 D_u & -1 \\
    \epsilon & -\epsilon - k^2 D_v
\end{pmatrix}.
\]

The trace and the determinant of matrix \( B \) are given as follows.

\[
\text{trace } B = -k^2 (D_u + D_v) + \text{trace} \\
\text{det } B = k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 (aD_v - \epsilon D_u) + \text{det}.
\]

In section 1.7.3, we saw that the only way to get instability is that equation (1-11) to be negative. Turing instability can be obtained if, the trace and the determinant of Jacobian matrix \( B \) are both negative.

\[
\text{trace } B = -k^2 (D_u + D_v) + a - \epsilon < 0 \\
\text{det } B = k^4 D_u D_v - k^2 (aD_v - \epsilon D_u) + \epsilon (1 - a) < 0.
\]

From above, assuming that \( D_u = 1 \), the conditions for \( k^2 \) to get Turing instability are

\[
k^2 > \frac{a - \epsilon}{1 + D_v} \\
\frac{aD_v - \epsilon - \sqrt{(aD_v + \epsilon)^2 - 4D_v \epsilon}}{2D_v} < k^2 < \frac{aD_v - \epsilon + \sqrt{(aD_v + \epsilon)^2 - 4D_v \epsilon}}{2D_v}.
\]

To find the limiting value of \( k^2 \), we proceed as follow

\[
\sqrt{(aD_v + \epsilon)^2 - 4D_v \epsilon} = \sqrt{(aD_v)^2 \left(1 + \frac{\epsilon}{aD_v}\right)^2 - 4D_v \epsilon} = aD_v \sqrt{\left(1 + \frac{\epsilon}{aD_v}\right)^2 - \frac{4}{a^2 D_v}}.
\]

Since \( \epsilon \) is very small, we have
So, the lower bound \( k_1^2 \) can be approximated by

\[
k_1^2 = aD_y - \sqrt{(aD_y + \varepsilon)^2 - 4D_y \varepsilon} \approx aD_y - \varepsilon - aD_y \left(1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{aD_y} - \frac{2\varepsilon}{a^2D_y}\right).
\]

Therefore

\[
k_1^2 \approx \left(1 - \frac{a}{aD_y}\right) \varepsilon.
\]

And the higher bound \( k_2^2 \) can be approximated by

\[
k_2^2 = aD_y - \varepsilon + \sqrt{(aD_y + \varepsilon)^2 - 4D_y \varepsilon} \approx aD_y - \varepsilon + aD_y \left(1 + \frac{\varepsilon}{aD_y} - \frac{2\varepsilon}{a^2D_y}\right).
\]

Therefore

\[
k_2^2 \approx a - \frac{\varepsilon}{aD_y}.
\]

\( k^2 \) can be bounded between

\[
\left(\frac{1-a}{aD_y}\right) \varepsilon < k^2 < a - \frac{\varepsilon}{aD_y}. \tag{3-17}
\]

Let’s consider the LHS of (3-17) that is we estimate the minimal value of \( k, k_{\text{min}} \):

\[
\left(\frac{1-a}{aD_y}\right) \varepsilon < k_{\text{min}}^2. \tag{3-18}
\]

We already know that \( k_{\text{min}} = \frac{\pi n_{\text{min}}}{L} \). By substituting into (3-18) we obtain.
From (3-19), $L$, $a$, and $D_v$ are fixed. Hence we can deduce that $n^2$ is proportional to $\varepsilon$. This is shown in equation (3-20).

$$(n_{\text{min}})^2 > \left(\frac{a}{D_v} \left(\frac{L}{\pi}\right)^2 \frac{1-a}{a}\right)^2$$

or

$$n_{\text{min}}^2 \sim \varepsilon.$$

Thus, the number of stripes increases when the kinetic rate increases. This is confirmed by numerical simulations as shown in Figure 3-18. The graph below shows that as $\varepsilon$ increases, the number of stripes increases quickly.

![Figure 3-18](image)

**Figure 3-18. Effect of $\varepsilon$ on the minimal number of stripes which can be stimulated in the medium described by the equation (3-20).**

Model parameters are: $D_u=1$, $D_v=50$, $k_u=4$, $\alpha=0.05$, up=0.1, $l=1$ and $L=2000$.

### 3.8 Three-variable FHN model

Previously, we started with oscillating solution and by adding diffusions, we have stripes. This was done with our considered modification of the FHN model (see (3-16)). We will use the proper FHN model (see (3-13)) to perform scaling. Like in Turing model, to introduce scaling into the FitzHugh-Nagumo model we have extended it with the third variable with a diffusion coefficient $D_z$ and a decay rate $k_z$. We assume that the kinetics of the inhibitor in FitzHugh-Nagumo system is affected by the concentration of the third variable (which has an exponential profile) and therefore in the second equation, we multiplied the second term on
the RHS by \( z^2 \). So the extended FHN model is given by (3-21).

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} &= D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k_u (u-1)(u-\alpha) - v + up, \\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} &= \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} &= D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \varepsilon (lu - v) z^2, \\
\frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} &= \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = 0, \\
\frac{\partial z}{\partial t} &= D_z \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - k_z z, \\
\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=0} &= -j_0, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \bigg|_{x=L} = j_z,
\end{align*}
\]

(3-21)

where \( D_u, D_v \) and \( D_z \) are the diffusion coefficients of \( u, v \) and \( z \) respectively, \( k_u \) represents the membrane conductance, \( \alpha \) is the threshold potential, \( \varepsilon \) is the recovery rate constant, \( k_z \) defines the degradation rate of \( z \) and \( j_0 \) and \( j_z \) specify the boundary fluxes of \( z \) at \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \) respectively. The solution of \( z \), provided that the ratio \((k_z/D_z)^{1/2}\) is very small, is given by:

\[
z = D_z (j_0 + j_z)/k_z L.
\]

The concentrations \( u, v \) and \( z \) are plotted in Figure 3-19.

---

**Figure 3-19: Scaling of the three-variable FHN model.**

The values of the parameters used to plots these profiles are: \( D_u=1, D_v=50, D_z=50, k_u=4, \alpha=0.05, \varepsilon=0.05, up=0.1, l=1, k_z=0.00001 \) and \( j_0=j_z=0.0001 \). The blue, red and green curves represent \( u, v \) and \( z \) profiles respectively. A: Simulation for the case \( L=700 \). B: Simulation for the case \( L=1400 \).

As we can see, the graphs (see Figure 3-19) show that \( z \) is a constant solution. For \( u \) and \( v \), they are periodic solutions. For both medium sizes, they have the same number of stripes with the same magnitudes. Now, we want to determine the scaling factor for \( v \) for example. As no analytical formula exists for it we compute it numerically. Its graph is shown in the Figure 3-20. As we can see, it is practically zero which corresponds to perfect scaling.
3.9 Summary

In this chapter, we had considered two more continuous model namely Turing and Fitzhugh-Nagumo model. Starting with the linear version of Turing model (two-variable), we found that there were two cases which can give Turing’s instability. The first case corresponds to the activator/inhibitor systems while the second for activator/substrate ones. In our study we have extended the activator/inhibitor system represented by a Turing model with cubic nonlinearity and by FHN model to derive two counterpart models whose solutions exhibit good scaling property.

Generally the patterns forming due to Turing instability are not unique. There can be many unstable special modes in the same system (Murray 2003). Extending the Turing model with cubic terms on the RHS prevents the concentrations going to infinity arising for unstable modes of solution and observes patterns of different periodicity arising in the same system. Coexistence of different patterns creates difficulties in maintenance of scaling. By variation of model parameters it is possible to reduce the number of unstable modes. To introduce scaling in Turing’s model, we added a third variable. The level of this third variable remains constant across the field.

For the Fitzhugh-Nagumo model, it is converted to the Turing model using most of its parameters. The transition from oscillating to stripes has been investigated. Then we introduced scaling in the FHN model like in the Turing’s model.
Chapter 4 Discrete model

Besides the continuous model based on reaction-diffusion equation systems, discrete model also exist for pattern formation studies. Unlike the continuous models based on the calculation of the gradient of morphogens (proteins), discrete models work on the cell-to-cell contact. We can have scaling if the number of nuclei, in embryos of different sizes, is the same. First, the model is based on cellular automata (CA). Cellular automaton is a collection of cells on a grid which evolve on a number of discrete time-step according to a set of rules based on the state of the cells. CA has been invented by John Von Neumann in the 1940s (Wainer, Liu et al. 2010). A detailed description of cellular automaton can be found in (Yang and Young 2010). And second, a derived version of the CA which is called the hybrid cellular automata model. In this chapter, we will focus on the application of the cellular automata model to describe pattern formation. The patterning is due to cell-to-cell contact. The outcome of this contact depends on the genes contained in each cell. The objective of this chapter is to see whether we can have stationary patterns using CA model. In section 4.1, we shall describe the technique of the cellular automata in pattern formation. This is followed by the two-state model analysis presented in section 4.2. Section 4.3 deals with Wolfram’s model followed by some of our simulation work. Section 4.4 deals with the three-state model. This is followed by four- or more- state models in section 4.5. Biological implementation will be discussed in section 4.6.

4.1 Technique of cellular automata

A cellular automaton technique requires a regular lattice of cell. This can have one, two or three dimensions. The procedure of the application of cellular automata to pattern formation is shown in Figure 4-1. In this flowchart \( N \) represents the number of cells, \( t \) is the current time and \( t_{\text{end}} \) is the end of simulation time. Before applying cellular automata to pattern formation modelling, the following definitions are required.

1. **State**: possible value a cell can have.
2. **Neighbour**: the set of cells which can interact with one cell.
3. Updating or transition rules: rules which define the future state of a cell according to its current state and that of its neighbours. In the cellular automaton technique, the reaction diffusion equation is transformed into updating rules.

This technique can provide nontrivial patterns including stationary, oscillating and propagating waves.

![Flow chart of cellular automata technique applied to pattern formation.](image)

**Figure 4-1: Flow chart of cellular automata technique applied to pattern formation.**

### 4.2 Chain of logical elements

A one-dimensional regular lattice of cells is used in the modelling of pattern formation. Each cell can have two or more states. A one-dimensional regular lattice with two-state cells is called a chain of logical elements. The state $S_i$ of each cell $i$ can be denoted by 0 (black) or 1 as (white), i.e. the cell is represented by a logical element. In application in biology, the state can reflect the expression of certain genes. The case of two-state represents whether a simple gene is expressed or not.
4.3 Wolfram’s model

Wolfram derived a one-dimensional variant of von Neumann’s cellular automata. This consists of a regular lattice of cells which can have two states ($S_i = 0$ or $S_i = 1$). Each cell is surrounded by only two other cells (its two closest neighbours). The state $S_i^{t+1}$ of a cell $i$ in the next generation is determined by the current state of cells $i-1$, $i$, and $i+1$ according to a transition rule $f$ defined by $S_i^{t+1} = f \left( S_{i-1}^t, S_i^t, S_{i+1}^t \right)$ (Wolfram 2002). This Wolfram model is called a two-state cellular automaton. A noise is introduced in order to assess the robustness of the obtained pattern. This means that a probability equal to the noise level is used to alter the result from the transition rule. An example of transition rule is

If (cell$(i−1)=1$ and cell$(i+1)=0$) then cell$(i)=0$.

A cell interacting with its two closest neighbours leads to the following findings.

- There are $2^3 = 8$ possible configurations, which are 111, 110, 101, 100, 011, 010, 001, and 000.
- For the above configurations, the resulting states are as follows (function $f$ is for compactness is replaced by the arrow):

  Configuration 0:   \((000) \rightarrow (0S_00)\)
  Configuration 1:   \((001) \rightarrow (0S_11)\)
  Configuration 2:   \((010) \rightarrow (0S_20)\)
  Configuration 3:   \((011) \rightarrow (0S_31)\)
  Configuration 4:   \((100) \rightarrow (1S_40)\)
  Configuration 5:   \((101) \rightarrow (1S_51)\)
  Configuration 6:   \((110) \rightarrow (1S_60)\)
  Configuration 7:   \((111) \rightarrow (1S_71)\).

- The above configurations are characterised by a binary number $S_7S_6S_5S_4S_3S_2S_1S_0$ which varies from 0 to 255. In other words, the configurations above allow $2^8 = 256$ possible cellular automata.

- The binary number $S_7S_6S_5S_4S_3S_2S_1S_0$ translated in decimal bases is taken to be the transition rule number.

We want to find a set of rules which cause formation of stationary periodic patterns.
4.3.1 Effects of initial condition and noise in the patterning for two-state model

In order to assess transition rules for their ability to produce stationary periodic patterns we have performed a number of simulations. In the first set of simulations we aimed finding out transition rules which do not destroy already existing periodic pattern. Therefore these simulations have been started with two-periodic initial conditions (1 white + 1 black) shown in Figure 4-2.

The results are as follows. Starting with initial periodic solution, 64 transition rules out 256 (25%) wouldn’t destroy it. Their values are in decimal format are as follows


Their binary expression is written in the form: XX0XX1XX, where X can be 0 or 1.

Configuration 2:   (010) $\rightarrow$ (010)
Configuration 5:   (101) $\rightarrow$ (101)

From one generation to the next, this pattern consisting of a repetition of black and white remains the same.

The second set of simulations were aimed to find out transition rules such that when we start with periodic initial conditions (see Figure 4-2) and apply a noise this rules will let the pattern to recover from noise. The noise level of 0.1% has been applied meaning that the state of one out of 1000 cells was altered each time step. Simulations show that 25 out of the above 64 transitions (which would keep the pattern when no noise is set) would “resist” to the perturbation caused by the noise. These transition rules are given by the following numbers:
For the analysis of this set of rules we shall point out that if the probability of changing the state of one cell is small, then the probability of changing the state of two cells will be smaller and therefore we can neglect it. Other rules restore periodic patterns from the noise in more than one time step, often taking the irregularity in a wave fashion to the left or right border. Let’s consider rule 77. Assume we have the sequence

01010101...

Assume that the digit 1 will change to 0, due to noise, to give

01000101...

Assume that, the digit 0 will change back to 1.

01010101...

Let’s analyse the scenario when the 0 change back to 1. Let’s start with the first the three digits 010. The one in the middle of 010 will stay as it is. This because the configuration says that (010)→(010). The next three digits are 100. The zero in the middle of 100 will stay as it is. This because the configuration says that (100)→(100). The next three digits are 000. The zero in the middle of 000 will change into 1. This because the configuration says that (000)→(010). The next three digits are 001. The zero in the middle of 001 will remain as it is. This because the configuration says that (001)→(001). So far the four configurations are

(010)→(010)
(000)→(010)
(100)→(100)
(001)→(001)

Now, let’s get back to the sequence

01010101...

Assume that the digit 0 will change to 1, due to noise, to give

01110101...
Assume that, the digit 1 will change back to 0.

01010101...

Let’s analyse the scenario when the 1 change back to 0. Let’s start with the first three digits are 011. The one in the middle of 011 will stay as it is. This because the configuration says that (011)→(011). The next three digits are 111. The zone in the middle of 111 will change into 0. This because the configuration says that (111)→(101). The next three digits are 110. The one in the middle of 110 will remain as it is. This because the configuration says that (110)→(110). The next three digits are 101. The zero in the middle of 101 will stay as it is. This is because the configuration says that (101)→(101). So far the four configurations are

(011)→(011)
(111)→(101)
(101)→(101)
(110)→(110)

In total, the configuration rules are

(000)→(010)
(001)→(001)
(010)→(010)
(011)→(011)
(100)→(100)
(101)→(101)
(110)→(110)
(111)→(101)

This binary number (01001101) is 77.

The third set of simulations aimed finding transition rules such that starting with random initial condition, the same periodic stationary patterns were obtained. These simulations have shown that such transition rules exist and given by the following numbers:

15, 30, 85, 86, 135 and 149.

Two transition rules, 15 and 85, converge faster towards the periodic stationary pattern (two time-steps to produce a new stripe.)
Now let’s analyse in details how the transition rule 15 results into formation of stationary periodic structure from any initial conditions. Shown below is some example of simulation forming periodic stationary patterns for transition rule 15.

The table on the left shows that at \( t=0 \), we start with 1011111. At the time increases the sequence 101 builds gradually. At \( t=4 \), we have the sequence 101… except on the right hand side we have a broken sequence 011. The table on the middle shows that at \( t=0 \), we start with 01011011. At the time increases the sequence 010 builds gradually. At \( t=4 \), we have the full sequence 101…. The table on the right shows that at \( t=0 \), we start with 01000100. At the time increases the sequence 010 builds gradually. At \( t=4 \), we have the sequence 010… except on the right hand side we have a broken sequence 100.

We shall write 15 into the configuration rule.

\[
15 = 00001111
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
(000) & \rightarrow (010) \\
(001) & \rightarrow (011) \\
(010) & \rightarrow (010) \\
(011) & \rightarrow (011) \\
(100) & \rightarrow (100) \\
(101) & \rightarrow (101) \\
(110) & \rightarrow (100) \\
(111) & \rightarrow (101)
\end{align*}
\]

**Proposition for rule 15:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements we will end up with two-periodic structure \((101010… \) or \(010101…)\) coming from the left which appears during \( k \) iterations. The final stationary sequence may have either 00 or 11 on the right hand side.

**Proof:** We have noted that under the transition rule 15 periodic pattern forms first on the left and then expand over the chain from the left to the right. Therefore we will consider various initial combinations occurring on the left side of the chain and analyse how they allow the
growth of the periodic structure to the right. First we consider four cases starting with the first
digit 1 on the left of the structure.

**Case A:** \(100x\).

\[100x \rightarrow 101x. \quad (1TS)\]

For **Case A**, one has initially \(100x\) (white, black, black, \(x\) is either black or white). Let’s start
with the first three digits. The first digit, 1, is fixed. The next digit, 0, remains the same. This
is because the configuration says that \((100) \rightarrow (100)\). The next three digits are \(00x\). Two
configurations which contain \(00x\) are \((000) \rightarrow (010)\) and \((001) \rightarrow (011)\). Whatever the value of
\(x\) is, the zero in the middle of \(00x\) will turn into 1. At the end, we obtain a stripe \(101\).

**Case B:** \(101x\).

\[101x. \quad (0TS)\]

For **Case B**, the pattern \(101\) is already established.

**Case C:** \(110x\).

\[110x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 101x. \quad (2TS)*\]

For **Case C**, one has initially \(110x\). Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is
fixed. The next digit, 1, turns into 0. This is because the configuration says that \((110) \rightarrow (100)\).
The next three digits are \(10x\). Two configurations containing \(10x\) are \((101) \rightarrow (101)\) and
\((110) \rightarrow (100)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of \(10x\) will stays the
same. Thus, we obtain \(100x\). We need one more procedure in order to reach \(101x\). The first
digit is fixed. The next digit of \(100x\), 0, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says
that \((100) \rightarrow (100)\). The next three digits are \(00x\). Two configurations containing \(00x\) are
\((000) \rightarrow (010)\) and \((001) \rightarrow (011)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of
\(00x\) will turn into a 1. Thus, we obtain \(101\).

**Case D:** \(111x\).

\[111x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 101x. \quad (2TS)*\]

For **Case D**, one has initially \(111x\). Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is
fixed. The next digit, 1, turns into 0. This is because the configuration says that \((111) \rightarrow (101)\).
The next three digits are \(11x\). Two configurations containing \(11x\) are \((110) \rightarrow (100)\) and
\((111) \rightarrow (101)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 1 in the middle of \(11x\) will change
into a 0. Thus, we obtain 100x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 101x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit of 100x, 0, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (100)\(\rightarrow\)(100). The next three digits are 00x. Two configurations containing 00x are (000)\(\rightarrow\)(010) and (001)\(\rightarrow\)(011). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will turn into a 1. Thus, we obtain 101.

**Cases E-H:** For other cases when one has 0xx, if one starts with 000x, we will reach 010x with two time-steps. This is similar to Case D except that one replaces ones by zeros. For the case when one starts with 001x, we will reach 010x with two time-steps. This is similar to Case C except that one replaces the ones by zeros and the zero by one. If one starts with 010x, then we already have a stripe 010x. For the case starting with 011x, we will reach 010x one time-step. This is similar to Case A except that one replaces the one by zero and the zeros by ones.

Concerning the right hand side, one might have either 00 or 11. For the case when one has two 00, the element before the two 00 can be either 0 or 1. If the element before 00 is 0, then one will have a full pattern. This is because the configuration in transition rule 15 says that (000)\(\rightarrow\)(010). If the element before 00 is 1, then one will have a broken pattern. This is because the configuration says that (100)\(\rightarrow\)(100). Consider the case when one might have 11 at the end. The element before the two 11 can be either 0 or 1. If the element before 11 is 1, then one will have a full pattern. This is because the configuration in transition rule 15 says that (111)\(\rightarrow\)(101). If the element before 11 is 0, then one will have a broken pattern. This is because the configuration says that (011)\(\rightarrow\)(011).

Thus the slowest way of formation of periodic structure implies the formation of one stripe during 2 time steps therefore in the medium containing k elements periodic structure (containing k/2 stripes) forms during k iterations.

We will consider the counterpart of 15 which is 85. We shall write 85 into the configuration rule.

\[
\begin{align*}
85 &= 01010101 \\
(000) &\rightarrow (010) \\
(001) &\rightarrow (001) \\
(010) &\rightarrow (010) \\
(011) &\rightarrow (001) \\
(100) &\rightarrow (111)
\end{align*}
\]
Proposition for rule 85: Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of $k$ elements we will end up with two-periodic structure (...101010 or ...010101) developing from the right end of the chain during $k$ iterations. The final stationary sequence may have either 00 or 11 on the left hand side.

Proof: We have noted that under the transition rule 85 periodic pattern forms first on the right and then expand over the chain from the right to the left. Therefore we will consider various initial combinations occurring on the right side of the chain and analyse how they allow the growth of the periodic structure to the left. Let’s consider four cases starting with the first digit 0 on the right of the structure.

Case A: $x000$.

$$x000 \rightarrow x110 \rightarrow x010. \quad (2TS)*$$

For Case A, one has initially $x000$ ($x$ is either black or white, black, black, black, ). Let’s start with the last three digits. The last digit, 0, is fixed. The next digit from right to left, 0, turns into 1. This is because the configuration says that (000)$\rightarrow$(010). The next three digits from right to left are $x00$. Two configurations which contain $x00$ are (100)$\rightarrow$(110) and (000)$\rightarrow$(010). Whatever the value of $x$ is, the zero in the middle of $x00$ will turn into 1. We have $x110$. We need to repeat the procedure in order to reach 010. The last digit, 0, is fixed. The next digit from right to left, $x110$, 1, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (110)$\rightarrow$(110). The next three digits from right to left are $x11$. Two configurations which contain $x11$ are (111)$\rightarrow$(100) and (011)$\rightarrow$(001). Whatever the value of $x$ is, the one in the middle of $x11$ will turn into 0. Thus, we have the sequence 010.

Case B: $x010$.

$$x010. \quad (0TS)$$

For Case B, the pattern 010 is already established.

Case C: $x100$.

$$x100 \rightarrow x110 \rightarrow x010. \quad (2TS)*$$
For **Case C**, one has initially $x100$. Let’s start with the last three digits. The last digit, 0, is fixed. The next digit from right to left, 0, changes to 1. This is because the configuration says that $(100)\to(110)$. The next three digits from right to left are $x10$. Two configurations which contain $x10$ are $(010)\to(010)$ and $(110)\to(110)$. Whatever the value of $x$ is, the one in the middle of $x10$ will remain 1. Thus, we obtain a stripe $x110$. We need to repeat the procedure in order to get $010$. The last digit, 0, is fixed. The next digit from right to left of $x110$, 1, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that $(110)\to(110)$. The next three digits from right to left are $x11$. Two configurations which contain $x11$ are $(111)\to(101)$ and $(011)\to(001)$. Whatever the value of $x$ is, the one in the middle of $x11$ will turn into 0. Thus, we have the sequence $010$.

**Case D**: $x110$.

$x110\to x010$ (1TS)

For **Case D**, one has initially $x110$. Let’s start with the last three digits. The last digit, 0, is fixed. The next digit from right to left, 1, remains the same. This is because the configuration says that $(110)\to(110)$. The next three digits from right to left are $x11$. Two configurations which contain $x11$ are $(011)\to(001)$ and $(111)\to(101)$. Whatever the value of $x$ is, the one in the middle of $x11$ will change to 0. At the end, we obtain a stripe $010$.

**Cases E-H**: For other cases when $xx1$, if one starts with $x001$, we will reach $x101$ with one time-step. This is similar to **Case D** except that one replaces the ones by zeros and the zero by one. For the case when one has $x011$, we will reach $x101$ with two time-steps. This is similar to **Case C** except that one replaces the one by zero and the zeros by ones. If one starts with $x101$, then we already have a stripe $x101$. For the case starting with $x111$, we will reach $x101$ with two time-steps. This is similar to **Case A** except that one replaces the zeros by ones.

Concerning on the left hand side, one might have either 00 or 11. The proof will be similar to 15 except that one starts from the right hand side.

We see that transition rule 15 takes two time steps to produce a stripe 101 from left to right. And transition rule 85 takes two time steps to produce a stripe 101 from right to left. The other four cases which are 30, 86, 135 and 149 converge slower compared to transitions rule 15 and 85.
Let’s consider transition rule 30. We shall write 30 into the configuration rule.

\[30 = 00011110\]

\[
\begin{align*}
(000) &\rightarrow (000) \\
(001) &\rightarrow (011) \\
(010) &\rightarrow (010) \\
(011) &\rightarrow (010) \\
(100) &\rightarrow (110) \\
(101) &\rightarrow (101) \\
(110) &\rightarrow (100) \\
(111) &\rightarrow (101)
\end{align*}
\]

**Proposition for rule 30:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \(k\) elements we will end up with two-periodic structure \((101010...\text{ or } 010101... )\) which appears from left to right during \(4.5k\) iterations. The final sequence may have irregularity or even oscillations of the second rightmost element in the sequence.

**Proof:** For the trivial case 0000...0...0 – nothing happens, that is rule 30 does not give periodic structure from this initial conditions. Any configuration 0000...01xxx, where the first occurrence of “1” is on \(n^{th}\) location \((n>1)\), transfers into 010xxxx, (where first and third elements in the chain are “0” and the second is “1”), after \((n−1)\) time steps.

For the case when \(n=2\), 010 is already established and 011 transfers into 010 in one time-step.

For the case when \(n=3\), the number of time-steps to reach 010x is 2.

\[001xxx\rightarrow 011xxx\rightarrow 010x \text{ (2 TS)}\]

Let us use mathematical induction. Assume that the statement is true for \(n=i\). Then, let us prove the statement for the case \(n=i+1\).

\[000...01xxx\]

where the digit 1 is in position \(i+1\). Then

\[000...01xxx\rightarrow 000...11xxx\]

At one time-step, the digit 1 will be at position \(n\). But according to the previous case \((n=i)\), we require \((n−1)\) time-step to reach 010. In total, we need \((n−1+1=n)\) time-steps.
For any initial condition starting with 1xx see Appendix G.

Concerning the right hand side, one might have oscillation. This is because the configuration in transition rule 30 says that (100)→(110) and (110)→(100). Also one might have an irregularity (e.g. 11 at the end). This is because if the element before the 11 is 0 the configuration says that (011)→(011). If the element before the 11 is 1, one will have a full pattern since the configuration says that (111)→(101).

Consideration for the transition rule 86 shows that it is very similar to the rule of 30 except for transition rule 86, the pattern forms from the other direction. Therefore we can make the following proposition.

**Proposition for rule 86:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of k elements we will end up with two-periodic structure (…101010 or …010101) which appears from right to left during 4.5k iterations. The final sequence may have irregularity or even oscillations of the second leftmost element in the sequence.

**Proof:** For the trivial case 0000...0...0 – nothing happens, that is rule 86 does not give periodic structure from this initial conditions. Any configuration xxx10...000, where the first occurrence of “1” is on nth location (n>1), transfers into xxxx010, (where on the right side, first and third elements in the chain are “0” and the second is “1”), after (n−1) time-steps. For any initial condition starting with xx1 the proof will be similar to rule 30 except that we start from the right hand side.

Concerning the left hand side, the proof will be analogous to 30 except that for 86 we are dealing with the left hand side.

For the two remaining transition rules (135 and 149) which cause the formation of stationary periodic structures, we can make the following propositions.

**Proposition for rule 135:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of k elements we will end up with two-periodic structure (101010… or 010101…) which appears from left to right during 4.5k iterations. The final sequence may have irregularity or even oscillations of the second rightmost element in the sequence.

**Proof:** For the trivial case 1111...1...1 – nothing happens, that is rule 135 does not give periodic structure from this initial conditions. Any configuration 1111...10xxx, where the first
occurrence of “0” is on \( n \)th location \((n > 1)\), transfers into \(101\)xxx, (where first and third elements in the chain are “1” and the second is “0”), after \((n−1)\) time-steps. The proof is similar to transition rule 30 except we replace 1 by 0. For any initial condition starting with 0xx, the proof will be similar to transition rule 30 except that we replace 1 by 0. Concerning the right hand side, the proof will be similar to 30 except that in rule 135, one replaces the 1 by 0.

**Proposition for rule 149:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements we will end up with two-periodic structure \((\ldots101010 \ldots010101)\) which appears from right to left during \(4.5k\) iterations. The final sequence may have irregularity or even oscillations of the second leftmost element in the sequence.

**Proof:** For the trivial case 111...1...1 – nothing happens, that is rule 149 does not give periodic structure from this initial conditions. Any configuration xxx01...111, where the first occurrence of “0” is on \( n \)th location \((n > 1)\), transfers into xxx01, (where on the right side, first and third elements in the chain are “1” and the second is “0”), after \((n−1)\) time-steps. For any initial condition starting with xx0 the proof will be similar to rule 86 except we replace 1 by 0. Concerning the left hand side, the proof will be similar to 86 except that in rule 149, one replaces the 1 by 0.

We have proved that all four transitions can form two periodic structure of the form \((101010\ldots \text{or } 010101\ldots)\). The difference between 30, 86, 135 and 149 are: 86 forms the patterns from the other direction compared to 30. For the case of 135, if one has initially all ones then nothing happen. But if there is at least one “0” on the \(n\)th position then it transfers into \(101\)xxx, (where first and third elements in the chain are “1” and the second is “0”), after \((n−1)\) time-steps. For the cases of 30 and 86, it’s the opposite way. For the case of 149, if one has initially all ones then nothing happen. But if there is at least one “0” on the \(n\)th position then it transfers into xxx01, (where the first and the third elements on the right side of the chain are “1” and the second is “0”), after \((n−1)\) time-steps. This is opposite to 135.

### 4.3.2 Formation of three-periodic stationary structures in the general cellular automata (two-state model)

The previous results have been obtained with periodicity of 2 of the two-state model. With a periodicity of 3, the following results have been obtained.
With initial periodic conditions shown on Figure 4-3, 32 transition rules conserve 2 blacks and 1 white (see Figure 4-3). These transition rules are given by the following numbers:

4, 5, 12, 13, 36, 37, 44, 45, 68, 69, 76, 77, 100, 101, 108, 109, 132, 133, 140, 141, 164, 165, 172, 173, 196, 197, 204, 205, 228, 229, 236, 237.

**Figure 4-3. Three-periodic pattern in two states (two blacks and one white).**

All of these numbers have a binary expression in the form of

\[ \_\_\_0\_10\_ \]

Configuration 1: (001) \(\rightarrow\) (001)
Configuration 2: (010) \(\rightarrow\) (010)
Configuration 4: (100) \(\rightarrow\) (100).

32 transition rules conserve 2 whites and 1 black (see Figure 4-4). These transition rules are given by the following numbers:

72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222 and 223.

They have in common the binary expression in the form of \(x10x1xxx:\)

configuration 3: (011) \(\rightarrow\) (011)
configuration 5: (101) \(\rightarrow\) (101)
configuration 6: (110) \(\rightarrow\) (110).

**Figure 4-4. Three-periodic pattern in two states (two whites and one black).**

Starting from random initial periodic solutions there are four transition rules which can produce 3-periodic patterns. These simulations have shown that such transition rules exist and given by the following numbers:

45, 75, 89 and 101.
The transition rules 45 and 75 produce 3-periodic stationary pattern from left to right. And transition rules 89 and 101 produce 3-periodic stationary pattern from right to left. Transition rules 45 and 101 produce 2 blacks and 1 white patterns. And transition rules 75 and 89 produce 2 whites and 1 black patterns.

### 4.3.3 General comment on periodic patterns in two-state model

Above we have considered in details two- and three- periodic structures forming in two-state model. Simulations indicated that no structures of higher periodicity can form in this model. Our analysis of this phenomenon brought to the following proposition.

**Proposition:** The maximum periodicity for stationary patterns arising from random initial conditions in two-state model is 3.

**Proof:** First we will prove that 4-periodic structures can’t be stationary in this model. Let’s consider the following 4-periodic patterns:

\[a_1a_2a_3a_4a_1a_2a_3a_4\ldots\]

where the above elements can be either 0 or 1. We have 16 possible cases for 4-periodicity in two states. These are as follows:

0000, 0001, 0010, 0011, 0100, 0101, 0110, 0111, 1000, 1001, 1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110 and 1111.

For the first and last cases (0000 and 1111), these are trivial and essentially not periodic. They are not interesting. For the cases 0101 and 1010, these are the two-periodicity elements. For the cases 0011, 00010001, 0010, 0111, 1000, 1001, 1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110 and 1111, these are acceptable. Now, for the last four cases which are 0011, 0110, 1100 and 1001, these can be represented as

\[(0011)^n\] or \[(0001)^n\]

where \(n\) gives the number of recurrence of the sequence in the brackets. Let’s consider the first case and look into the part of the sequence containing two periods 00110011. The first three digits from left to right are 001. Between 0 and 1, one has 0. The next three digits from left to right are 011. Between 0 and 1, one has 1. This is a contradiction to the fact that between 0 and 1 one has 0 in the middle. Let’s consider the second case (00010001xxx). The first three digits from left to right are 000. Between 0 and 0, one has 0. The next three digits
from left to right are 001. Between 0 and 1, one has 0. So, this is fine. The next three digits from left to right are 010. Between 0 and 0, one has 1. This is a contradiction to the fact that between 0 and 0, one has 0 in the middle. The same argument applies for 5- or more-periodicity.

In summary, for the two-state model, the following have been noticed: the initial condition and the level of noise affect the number of transition rules leading to the periodic stationary patterns. Without noises, some transition rules (15 and 85) converge faster to the periodic stationary patterns than the others. The increase of the periodicity of the solution reduces the number of transition rules.

### 4.4 Three-state model

The two-state model is expanded to allow three or more states per cell. The transitions in a chain of logically elements having three states are given by a set of 27 configurations, as each cell in the triple (considered cell and its two neighbours) has three possible states (black, grey and white that is 0, 1 and 2 respectively). The three-state system can have a periodicity of 3. One example is shown in Figure 4-5.

![Figure 4-5 Pattern with periodicity of 3 in three-state model.](image)

The three-state model gives the 27 following configurations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration 0:</th>
<th>Configuration 14:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000 → (0S_00)</td>
<td>112 → (1S_{142})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 1:</td>
<td>Configuration 15:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>001 → (0S_{11})</td>
<td>120 → (1S_{150})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 2:</td>
<td>Configuration 16:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002 → (0S_{22})</td>
<td>121 → (1S_{161})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 3:</td>
<td>Configuration 17:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010 → (0S_{30})</td>
<td>122 → (1S_{172})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 4:</td>
<td>Configuration 18:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011 → (0S_{41})</td>
<td>200 → (2S_{180})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 5:</td>
<td>Configuration 19:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012 → (0S_{52})</td>
<td>201 → (2S_{191})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 6:</td>
<td>Configuration 20:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020 → (0S_{60})</td>
<td>202 → (2S_{202})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 7:</td>
<td>Configuration 21:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021 → (0S_{71})</td>
<td>210 → (2S_{210})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 8:</td>
<td>Configuration 22:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022 → (0S_{82})</td>
<td>211 → (2S_{221})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 9:</td>
<td>Configuration 23:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 → (1S_{90})</td>
<td>212 → (2S_{232})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration 10:</td>
<td>Configuration 24:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 → (1S_{101})</td>
<td>220 → (2S_{240})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Each transition rule can be characterised by a number to the base of 3 which varies from 0 to $3^{27} - 1$ ($3^{27}$).

Similarly, we want to find which transition rules do not destroy existing patterns which is shown in Figure 4-5. The results are as follows. Starting with initial periodic solution, 2($3^{24}$) transition rules out $3^{27}$ (4.7%) wouldn’t destroy it. Their expression in base 3 is written in the form of

$$XXXXXXX0XXX2XXXXXXX1XXXXX$$

or

$$XXXXX1XXXXXXX0XX2XXXXXX$$

where $X$ can be 0, 1 or 2.

Examples of transition rules for the three-state are: 286980577, 28875204, 10460889018. Similarly as in the two-state model, this pattern consisting of a repetition of black, grey and white remains the same from one generation to the next.

We also found that they are four transition rules which take two time step to produce stripes. These simulations have shown that such transition rules exist and given by the following numbers:

$$387410647, 2053045476727, 3226214320571$$ and $$3812605051931$$
Transition rules 387410647 and 3812605051931 give periodic stationary patterns from left to right like transition rule 15. And the other two 2053045476727 and 3226214320571 give periodic stationary patterns from right to left transition rule 85. Let’s deal with 387410647.

\[
387410647 = \begin{align*}
(000) & \rightarrow (010) \\
(001) & \rightarrow (011) \\
(002) & \rightarrow (012) \\
(010) & \rightarrow (010) \\
(011) & \rightarrow (011) \\
(012) & \rightarrow (012) \\
(020) & \rightarrow (010) \\
(021) & \rightarrow (011) \\
(022) & \rightarrow (012) \\
(100) & \rightarrow (120) \\
(101) & \rightarrow (121) \\
(102) & \rightarrow (122) \\
(110) & \rightarrow (120) \\
(111) & \rightarrow (121) \\
(112) & \rightarrow (122) \\
(120) & \rightarrow (120) \\
(121) & \rightarrow (121) \\
(122) & \rightarrow (122) \\
(200) & \rightarrow (200) \\
(201) & \rightarrow (201) \\
(202) & \rightarrow (202) \\
(210) & \rightarrow (200) \\
(211) & \rightarrow (201) \\
(212) & \rightarrow (202) \\
(220) & \rightarrow (200) \\
(221) & \rightarrow (201) \\
(222) & \rightarrow (202)
\end{align*}
\]

**Proposition for rule 387410647:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements, we will end up with three-periodic structure (120120... or 201201... or 012012...) coming from the left which appears during \( k \) iterations.

**Proof:** See Appendix H.

**Proposition for rule 3812605051931:** Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements, we will end up with three-periodic structure (021021... or 102102... or 210210...) coming from the left which appears during \( k \) iterations.
**Proof:** The proof is similar to the case of transition rule 387410647. By considering nine cases starting with the first digit 1 on the left of the structure, one of the cases will end with two time-steps. The same proofs can be applied for the cases if one starts with the first digit 0 or 2 on the left of the structure.

**Proposition for rule** 2053045476727: Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements, we will end up with three-periodic structure (\( \ldots 210210 \) or \( \ldots 021021 \) or \( \ldots 102102 \)) coming from the right which appears during \( k \) iterations.

**Proof:** By considering nine cases starting with the first digit 1 on the right of the structure, one of the cases will end with two time-steps. The same proofs can be applied for the cases if one starts with the first digit 0 or 2 on the right of the structure.

**Proposition for rule** 3226214320571: Starting from any initial conditions in the chain of \( k \) elements, we will end up with three-periodic structure (\( \ldots 012012 \) or \( \ldots 120120 \) or \( \ldots 201201 \)) coming from the right which appears during \( k \) iterations.

**Proof:** The proof is similar to the case of transition rule 3226214320571. By considering nine cases starting with the first digit 1 on the right of the structure, one of the cases will end with two time-steps. The same proofs can be applied for the cases if one starts with the first digit 0 or 2 on the right of the structure.

**4.5 Four- and more-state models**

The transitions in a chain of logically elements having four states are given by a set of 64 configurations. The four-state system can have a maximum periodicity of 6 as shown in Figure 4-6.

![Figure 4-6 Pattern with periodicity of 6 in 4-state model.](image)

As the number of state increases, the number of transition rule becomes astronomical. For instance, with the four-state systems, the total number is \( 4^{64} \) and with five-state system the
total number is $5^{125}$. The transition in a chain of logically elements having $n$ states thus would include $n^3$ configurations and will have in total $n^6$. We shall make some preliminary analyses to find interesting transitions. As a guidance, the same methodology as in analysis of two-state system can be used. This permits to make reasonable assumptions on “interesting” sets of rules for $n$-state systems and therefore to avoid blind simulation of all possible transition sets.

As major findings on cellular automata with higher states, the number of transition rules increases astronomically with the number of states.

### 4.6 Biological implementations

The results in patterning due to local interactions of logical elements can be used to explain biological pattern formations. Such interactions can represent contact (membrane-to-membrane) interactions between cells in biological tissues resulting into differentiation of cells. For example two-state model can represent chain of locally interacting cells, where cells in state “1” express some particular gene while in state “0” don’t (see Figure 4-7). Therefore the modelled interactions can be seen as regulating the differentiation of cells.

The periodic stationary pattern forming in a two-state model represents a chain of cells where each second cell expresses the gene. These patterns can form under various interactions (transitions) from wide range of initial conditions.

![Figure 4-7: Generation of two-periodic pattern.](image)

*The black stripe has a cell which is not expressed and the white stripe has a cell which is expressed.*

The three-state model doesn’t have direct biological implementation, while the four-state model can be viewed as modelling cells whose differentiation is associated with expression of pair of genes. The four-periodic pattern (i.e. $0, 1, 2, 3, 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$) or alternating black, dark grey, light grey and white) can correspond to the following alternation of gene expression (Figure 4-8 panel A). The four-state model can have a five periodic pattern that is $0, 1, 2, 3, 2, 0, 1, 2, 3, 2, \ldots$ or alternating black, dark grey, light grey, white and light grey
The four-state model can also have a six periodic pattern that is 0, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, … or alternating **black, dark grey, light grey, white, light grey and dark grey** (see Figure 4-8 panel C).

### Figure 4-8: Generation of four-, five- and six-periodic pattern.

**A:** The black stripe element has two cells which are not expressed. The dark and light stripes grey have one cell which is expressed and the other one is not. The white stripe has two cells which are expressed. **B:** The black stripe element has two cells which are not expressed. The dark and light stripes grey have one cell which is expressed and the other one is not. The white stripe has two cells which are expressed. **C:** The black stripe element has two cells which are not expressed. The dark and light stripes grey have one cell which is expressed and the other one is not. The white stripe has two cells which are expressed.

Formation of periodic stationary patterns in four-state model are extremely sensitive to the initial conditions, i.e. these patterns forms only when very special initial conditions are met. This may explain the multi- (four-) level of segmentation in the fly embryo (Figure 1-5). The model can account for interactions between segment polarity genes with specific initial conditions set by above three levels of patterning.

### 4.7 Summary

The pattern formation which is governed by cell-to-cell interactions has been modelled using a 1-dimensional chain of logical element. A cell is represented by a logical element of the chain. The expression of gene inside the cell defines the state of the logical element. In this model, the cells interact with two closest neighbours according to a set of rules. This model can be applied to simulate pattern formation in some biological systems including segmentation. It allows the modelling of stationary patterns forming in one dimensional chain of cells. We can have scaling if the number of nuclei, in embryos of different sizes, is the same. The findings are as follows.

With a two-state model, the transition is characterised by a binary number which varies from 0 to 255 which means, there are 256 transitions. 64 out of these 256 transitions gave periodic stationary patterns using fixed initial conditions (preset stationary patterns are not destroyed).
Out of these 64 transitions, 25 are resistive to noise which represents the external effect to the cells. Out of these 64 transitions, there were 6 which gave periodic stationary patterns using random initial conditions. According to the initial condition, the patterning can start from either side. Also, the initial condition affects the timescale of the pattern formation.

For three-state model, a few transitions can produce three-periodic patterns. However, they don’t have any direct biological implementation. Four-state model can be viewed as modelling cells whose differentiation is associated with expression of pair of genes. The allowance of multi-gene in a cell can be specified by four or more states. For instance, four-state model expresses the presence of a pair of genes. All of these multi-state models might exhibit stationary patterns.

We have seen that in continuous models, the diffusion rate is one of the parameters which can be used to control scaling. This option is not possible for discrete model due to diffusion absence.
Chapter 5 Conclusions and discussion

This thesis is devoted to study of scaling properties of morphogenetic patterns. For pattern formations in biological systems, the robustness with respect to the developmental conditions is an important property. One of the particularities of robustness is the scaling with the size of developing object. This has been demonstrated experimentally in fly and sea urchin embryos (Khaner 1993, Gregor, Bialek et al. 2005). Also, recent observations (Parker 2011) confirm that scaling of biological patterns takes place at the echelon of morphogen gradients. Biological pattern formations have been the subject of extensive research for many decades (since Turing’s work in 1952). Many research groups are working towards revealing the mechanisms underlying robustness and scaling of biological patterns. In this thesis, a few hypothetical mechanisms of scaling which can take place during morphogenetic patterning and differentiation of cells in tissues have been explored. It was proposed that scaling in continuous systems can take place due to interplay of morphogens such that the level of one morphogen depends on the size of the medium and it modifies the kinetics of another morphogen in a way that the second scales. Correspondingly, modifications of diffusion/decay and Turing-type models have been designed (in chapters 2 and 3) such that their solutions scale with the medium size. Also we have designed a discrete-type model (chapter 4) which relates the properties of patterns to number of interacting entities (i.e. number of nuclei in fly oocyte) so that the forming patterns scale with the number of interacting entities rather than with the physical size of the object and therefore insensitive to the size (i.e. scale).

5.1 Summary

The motivation of chapter 2 was to modify the diffusion/decay model such that its exponential solution scales. This chapter is started with the analysis of scaling properties of exponential profiles forming in simple diffusion/decay systems. We have shown that with the Dirichlet boundary condition, scaling occurs under certain conditions. For the case of Neumann, the solution does not exhibit any scaling property. From the Neumann boundary condition result, a new model called Scaling of exponential profile has been derived. The analysis of the morphogens in annihilation model, where both variables have the same diffusion and decay coefficients, has shown some scaling property. For the nuclear trapping
model, we found out that the solution for the case of mixed boundary condition scales under some conditions. But for the case of Neumann boundary condition, the solution doesn’t scale. This contradicts to the result of (Umulis 2009) since he claims that the solution can scale.

The main mechanism of scaling studied in the 2nd chapter can be summarised as the following. There is a morphogen which is produced in a region of fixed size with a constant rate and this rate doesn’t depend on the size of the tissue. This morphogen is degraded everywhere in the tissue with a functional rate which also doesn’t depend on the size of the medium (however, the overall degradation rate as an integral over the medium will increase with the size of the medium). In addition, this morphogen diffuses quickly enough to maintain roughly constant level all over the tissue and this level is inverse proportional to the medium size. This morphogen affects the kinetics rates of another morphogen (also forming diffusion/decay system) responsible for patterning in the tissue and therefore the kinetics of the morphogen depends on the size of the tissue. By tuning the interactions between morphogens we can get the kinetics rate which is inverse proportional to the size of the medium and then the forming morphogenetic pattern scale perfectly well.

The motivation of chapter 3 was to modify the Turing and FHN model in order that scaling occurs i.e. the number of stripe is the same for two medium sizes. In this chapter, the investigations were carried out with the original Turing model and Fitzhugh-Nagumo model. The extension of the Turing model with addition of cubic terms prevents the concentrations going to infinity. Turing patterns have been obtained from stable solution by “turning” on diffusions. The objective is to assess the effects of the size of the medium $L$ and the diffusion of the inhibitor on the number of stripes. A third variable has been included to measure scaling in the Turing model. For the Fitzhugh-Nagumo model, oscillating solution can be obtained by shifting up the cubic nullcline. The FHN model is equivalent to the Turing model by removing the second cubic terms in the latter model. In this equivalent model (modified Turing model) without diffusion, Turing patterns have been obtained from oscillating solution. A third variable is included in the FHN model to allow for scaling.

In chapter 4, the investigations focused on discrete model where the pattern formation is governed by cell-to-cell interactions. The patterning can be affected by the noises and the initial conditions. Also, the initial condition affects the timescale of the pattern formation. The discrete model of pattern formation does consider scaling issue. However, the scale of
patterning (special periodicity) is related to the number of cells in the chain rather than to cell sizes or size of the embryo.

**5.2 Comparison of our definition for scaling factor with others**

In term of scaling, many indications show that it is based on the discrete nature (with discrete entities represented by cells or nuclei) of biological objects. Some of the mathematical models presented exhibit the scaling property (French Flag for instance) but others do not satisfy this property (models allowing exponential profile forming in systems with decay or Turing patterns). Following the investigation on how scaling is considered in a few continuous models, we introduced a new formula of scaling factor (see (5-1)) and tested it in continuous models where analytical formula is not available. For our scaling factor $S$, the perfect scaling is characterised by $S=0$. This formula is different from the one done by de Lachapelle and Bergmann (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010) where the perfect scaling is characterised by $S=1$. In order to compare our scaling factor with theirs (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010) and we need to convert theirs in terms of $\xi$. Their scaling factor in terms of $\xi$ (relative position) is shown in (5-2).

![Graph](image)

*Figure 5-1: Two quadratic profiles $u=0.5\xi^2(\xi-1)+4$ for different values of $L$ and plots of the scaling factors for the quadratic profiles of $u$.

A: The blue and red profiles are for $L=2$ and $L=4$ respectively. B: The blue curve indicates our scaling factor and the red curve indicates (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010) scaling factor. In panel A, we have symmetric profiles. Our scaling factor calculated according to formula (5-1) and shown by blue line on panel B, is also symmetric, while scaling factor calculated according to (5-2) is not symmetric. The scaling factor at $\xi=0.5$ is at infinity because the derivative at this point is 0. Furthermore, the scaling factor at both $\xi=0$ and $\xi=1$ is zero since the two profiles have the same concentration. Their scaling factor is not symmetric at all. Furthermore, at both ends, their scaling factor has different values. That’s why our definition of scaling is better than the one which has been done by de Lachapelle and Bergmann (de Lachapelle and Bergmann 2010).*
The formula (5-1) does not show a singularity at $\xi=0$ ($S$ tends towards infinity) which is not the case for (5-2). Furthermore, for two symmetric profiles from two different lengths, the scaling factor should be symmetric (see Figure 5-1). Consequently, our definition of scaling factor (implying that perfect scaling correspond to $S=0$) seems to be more suitable for analysis of the concentration profiles.

### 5.3 Applications to the segmentation of fly embryo

As discussion, the various mathematical models of pattern formations reported are of two types: continuous one and discrete one. The application of these models to a biological system where the scaling has been demonstrated is very useful to understand the scaling property. The Drosophila embryo is one of the best understood of these biological systems. The development of Drosophila embryo occurs in four levels of patterns (see Figure 1-5). In the first level which consists of the maternity genes, the gradient of Bicoid after fertilisation should be addressed by a continuous reaction-diffusion model (exponential model) (see Figure 5-2). Models analysing possible interactions (mutual influence to decay kinetics) between maternal genes could give some ideas on the mechanisms of 1st level scaling. The scaling of the 2nd and 3rd (and even 4th) levels are, most likely, preconditioned by the scaling in the 1st level. The second level involves the gap genes which spatial patterns are controlled by the maternity genes. A good modelling tool is provided by the Turing model (see equation

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + \left( \gamma (au + bv) - \alpha_u u^3 \right) z^2, \quad \quad \quad \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} + \left( \gamma (cu + dv) - \alpha_v v^3 \right) z^2, \quad \quad \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial t} = D_z \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} - k_z z, \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right|_{x=0} = 0, \quad \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right|_{x=L} = 0, \quad \left. \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right|_{x=0} = 0, \quad \left. \frac{\partial v}{\partial x} \right|_{x=L} = 0, \quad \left. z \right|_{x=0} = z_0, \quad \left. z \right|_{x=L} = z_L
\]

(5-3)

where $D_u$, $D_v$, and $D_z$ are the diffusion coefficients of $u$, $v$ and $z$ respectively, $k_z$ defines the degradation rate of $z$, $a$, $b$, $c$, $d$, $\alpha_u$, $\alpha_v$, $\gamma$ are parameters and $z_0$ and $z_L$ specify the boundary
values of $z$ at $x=0$ and $x=L$ respectively. The plot of system (5-3) is shown in Figure 5-2. The third and fourth levels are well described by discrete models. The third level which comprises the pair-rule genes is formed by stripes which are regulated by the gap genes. The two-state discrete model permits the modelling of pair-rule genes patterning (see Figure 4-2). The last genes on the hierarchy are the segment-polarity genes. They consist of fourteen stripes of transcription around each embryo. The four-state discrete model is well suited to describe segment-polarity genes (see Figure 4-6). The logical interactions between cells, which we have explored here, are rather assumed (on the basis of biological observations) to stabilise the fourth level patterning. Therefore those of explored here transitions which result into stationary patterns should be compared with biological observations on interactions between 4th level genes to support and/or complete those observations.

Figure 5-2: Graph modelling the first and second level of the fly embryo development. The first level consisting of the maternity genes can be shown by the green curve. The second level involving the gap genes is represented by the blue and red curves. The concentrations $u$, $v$ and $z$ are represented by the blue, red and green curves respectively. Zero-flux boundary conditions are used for $u$ and $v$ and Dirichlet boundary condition for $z$. A: The model parameters are as follows: $D_u=1$, $D_v=20$, $D_z=50$, $\gamma=0.2$, $k_z=0.02$, $a=1$, $b=-2$, $c=3$, $d=-4$, $z_0=1$, $z_L=0.6$, $\alpha_u=0.1$ and $\alpha_v=-0.1$. B: The model parameters are as follows: $D_u=1$, $D_v=20$, $D_z=50$, $\gamma=0.15$, $k_z=0.02$, $a=1$, $b=-2$, $c=3$, $d=-4$, $z_0=1$, $z_L=0$, $\alpha_u=0.1$ and $\alpha_v=-0.1$.

5.4 Future works

Concerning stationary patterns forming in FitzHugh-Nagumo model we have noted that different number of spikes can be initiated in the same medium. For these patterns the spatial profiles of spikes can be of different width while their amplitude is pretty much the same. This gave us an idea of scaling mechanism which can take place when the stripe should fit a limited space: that is, it is possible that under some conditions the width of the strip is proportional to the space given and therefore scales. To check whether it is true, it is
proposed to stimulate a single stripe in the medium of small size and investigate its scaling properties. The size of the medium will be varied.

For the discrete system, we have seen in the previous chapter that 25 out of 64 transitions were resistive to noise. There are two types of noises. The first type is that in some transition, the disturbance to the stationary pattern is extinct locally. We have already considered one example. And the second type is that the noise is expelled by propagation towards their edge of the medium. We will investigate the latter one for future work.

For the 3-periodic in two-state model, we saw that there were 32 out of 256 transitions which would conserve 3-periodic stationary pattern starting from initial 3-periodic solutions. But there were only 4 out of these 32 transitions which would exhibit patterns starting from random initial condition. Some initial conditions give patterns and some do not. This requires extensive research.

For the case of 4-state model, we have $4^{43}$ transition rules. This number makes the analysis of 4-state models to be a challenging task. One way in approaching this problem would be by reducing the problem to that in two-state system. That is, the state of an element in 4-state system can be represented by a state of two elements each taken from one of two two-state systems. That is, the sequence formed by 4-state elements ($e_1, e_2, \ldots, e_n$) can be represented by two interlinked sequences of 2-state elements ($e_1=(x_1, y_1)$, $e_2=(x_2, y_2)$, \ldots, $e_n=(x_n, y_n)$) as shown in Figure 5-3. The simplest case to analyse is represented by rules such that they are represented by a pair of rules for 2-state systems, i.e. $x_n$ is affected only by $x_{n-1}$ and $x_{n+1}$ and $y_n$ is only affected by $y_{n-1}$ and $y_{n+1}$. The total amount of such transition rules is $2^9$ (which is a tiny fraction for $4^{64}$ of all possible transition rules).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$x_1$</th>
<th>$x_2$</th>
<th>$x_3$</th>
<th>$x_4$</th>
<th>$x_5$</th>
<th>$\ldots$</th>
<th>$x_n$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$y_1$</td>
<td>$y_2$</td>
<td>$y_3$</td>
<td>$y_4$</td>
<td>$y_5$</td>
<td>$\ldots$</td>
<td>$y_n$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Figure 5-3: Representation of 4-state ($e$) elements by two 2-state ($x$, $y$) elements. The pair ($x$, $y$) can have four states: 00, 01, 10 and 11.*

This approach for example can allow us to find out all rules (out of those which can be considered in a given way) resulting into periodic solutions. As pattern in each of the
sequences can be 2 or 3 periodic the combined pattern can only be 2, 3 or 6 periodic. By allowing interactions between elements from different sequences we can consider other transition rules. This is a large task to be considered in a future work.
Appendix A

One-variable system with decay

The maternal Bicoid mRNA in fly embryo is localised in a small region on its apical side and the Bicoid protein produced in this region diffusively spreads and decays along the entire embryo (Figure 1-9 is an illustration of this system). Here we show that when the area of the production is small, we can replace it by a boundary flux at $x=0$ in which this will be derived in this appendix.

For $0<x<a$, we have

$$D \frac{d^2C}{dx^2} + p - kC = 0. \quad (A-1)$$

And for $a \leq x < L$, we have

$$D \frac{d^2C}{dx^2} - kC = 0. \quad (A-2)$$

The solutions of the equations (A-1) and (A-2) are given respectively by $C_1(x)$ and $C_2(x)$.

$$C(x) = \begin{cases} 
C_1(x) = Ae^{\lambda x} + Be^{-\lambda x}, & 0 < x < a \\
C_2(x) = Ee^{\lambda x} + Fe^{-\lambda x}, & a \leq x < L,
\end{cases} \quad (A-3)$$

where $\lambda = (k/D)^{1/2}$. Since we have four unknowns, we need four conditions. Two conditions are $(C_1(x=0))'=0$ and $(C_2(x=L))'=0$. The other two conditions are the continuity, i.e. $C_1(x)=C_2(x)$ and the derivative i.e. $(C_1(x))'=(C_2(x))'$ at $x=a$. First we shall differentiate both solutions.

$$\frac{dC_1(x)}{dx} = A\lambda e^{\lambda x} - B\lambda e^{-\lambda x} \quad (A-4)$$

$$\frac{dC_2(x)}{dx} = E\lambda e^{\lambda x} - F\lambda e^{-\lambda x}. \quad (A-5)$$

We compute equation (A-4) at $x=0$.

$$\frac{dC_1(x=0)}{dx} = A - B = 0 \Rightarrow A = B.$$
We compute equation (A-5) at \( x=L \).

\[
\frac{dC_2(x = L)}{dx} = e^{\lambda L} - e^{-\lambda L} = 0 \Rightarrow e^{\lambda L} = e^{-\lambda L} \Rightarrow F = e^{2\lambda L}.
\]

We use the other two conditions: \( C_1(x) = C_2(x) \) and the derivative i.e. \( (C_1(x))'(=C_2(x))' \), of the function at \( x=a \). We will use the first condition which is \( C_1(a) = C_2(a) \) in equation (A-3).

\[
A e^{\lambda a} + A e^{-\lambda a} + \frac{p}{k} = E e^{\lambda a} + E e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{-\lambda a} \right) + \frac{p}{k} = E \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right).
\]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(A-6)}

We shall use the second condition which is \( (C_1(a))' = (C_2(a))' \) in equations (A-4) and (A-5).

\[
A e^{\lambda a} - A e^{-\lambda a} = E e^{\lambda a} - E e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \right) = E \left( e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right).
\]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(A-7)}

In equation (A-7), \( E \) can be written as

\[
E = \frac{A \left( e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \right)}{e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)}}.
\]  \hspace{1cm} \text{(A-8)}

Putting the expression of \( E \) into equation (A-6), we have

\[
A \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{-\lambda a} \right) + \frac{p}{k} = A \left( e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \right) \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right) \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{-\lambda a} \right) - A \left( e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \right) \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right) = -\frac{p}{k} \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{-\lambda a} \right) - \frac{e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right)}{e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)}} = -\frac{p}{k} \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( \frac{e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a} \left( e^{\lambda a} + e^{\lambda (2L-a)} \right)}{e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)}} \right) = -\frac{p}{k} \Rightarrow
\]

\[
A \left( \frac{2 - 2 e^{\lambda a + \lambda (2L-a)}}{e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)}} \right) = -\frac{p}{k}
\]

\[
A \left( \frac{2 - 2 e^{2\lambda a}}{e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda (2L-a)}} \right) = -\frac{p}{k} \Rightarrow
\]
\[ A = B = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda(2L-a)})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}. \]

We need to compute the expression of \( E \) in equation (A-8).

\[ E = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}. \]

We already know that

\[ F = Ee^{2L\lambda} = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{2L\lambda}. \]

In summary, the expressions of \( A, B, E, \) and \( F \) are as follows

\[ A = B = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda(2L-a)})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}, \]

\[ E = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}, \]

\[ F = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{2L\lambda}. \]

By putting the expressions of \( A, B, E \) and \( F \), the solutions of \( C_1(x) \) and \( C_2(x) \) are

\[ C_1(x) = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda(2L-a)})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{\lambda x} - \frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda(2L-a)})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{-\lambda x} + \frac{p}{k} \]

\[ C_2(x) = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{\lambda x} - \frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}e^{2L\lambda}e^{-\lambda x} \]

By simplifying the above solutions, we get

\[ C_1(x) = \frac{p}{k}\left(1 - \frac{(e^{\lambda a} - e^{\lambda(2L-a)})(e^{\lambda x} + e^{-\lambda x})}{2(1-e^{2L\lambda})}\right) \]

\[ C_2(x) = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})(e^{\lambda x} + e^{2L\lambda-x})}{2k(1-e^{2L\lambda})}. \]

We replace \( p \) by \( p/\alpha \) in \( C_2(x) \).

\[ C_2(x) = -\frac{p(e^{\lambda a} - e^{-\lambda a})(e^{\lambda x} + e^{2L\lambda-x})}{2ak(1-e^{2L\lambda})}. \]
As $a$ gets smaller, we use the linear approximations.

\[ e^{a\lambda} \approx 1 + a\lambda \]

\[ e^{-a\lambda} \approx 1 - a\lambda. \]

Substituting these linear approximations in $C_2(x)$, we get

\[ C_2(x) \approx -\frac{p \left(1 + a\lambda - (1 - a\lambda) \right) \left(e^{x\lambda} + e^{\lambda(2L-x)}\right)}{2ak \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)} = -\frac{2ap\lambda \left(e^{x\lambda} + e^{\lambda(2L-x)}\right)}{2ak \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)} = -p\lambda \left(e^{x\lambda} + e^{\lambda(2L-x)}\right). \]

Differentiating and simplifying $C_2(x)$, we get

\[ (C_2(x))' = -\frac{p \left(e^{x\lambda} - e^{\lambda(2L-x)}\right)}{D \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)}. \]

Evaluating $(C_2(x))'$ at $x=0$ and $x=L$, we obtain

\[ \left(C_2(x)\right)' \Big|_{x=0} = -\frac{p \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)}{D \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)} = -\frac{P}{D} \]

\[ \left(C_2(x)\right)' \Big|_{x=L} = -\frac{p \left(e^{L\lambda} - e^{\lambda(2L-L)}\right)}{D \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)} = -\frac{p \left(e^{L\lambda} - e^{L\lambda}\right)}{D \left(1 - e^{2L\lambda}\right)} = 0. \]

Thus we have shown that when the area of production, on the left side, is small compare to the medium size, we can replace the internal production by a boundary flux.
Appendix B

Scaling of exponential profile (First Mechanism)

In Section 2.3, we have shown that the solution of $u$ for the case of Neumann boundary condition doesn’t scale at all. However, under certain conditions (when the diffusion is too fast or decay is slow) this solution levels up to the value inverse proportional to the medium size. We can use this result for coupling with another variable such that the latter one can be scaled. In chapter 2, the solution of $v(x)$ (see (2-22)) can be approximated by only one exponent. It does scale indeed. In this appendix we derive the solution (2-22). We introduce a second reaction-diffusion equation for $v$ and we multiply the decay term by $u^2$ as shown below.

$$D_v \frac{d^2v}{dx^2} - k_v u^2 = 0; \quad v(x=0) = v_0, \quad \frac{dv}{dx}(x=L) = j_v.$$

where $v_0$ is the boundary value at $x=0$ and $j_v$ is the boundary flux at $x=L$. We already know the approximation of $u$ from section 2.3.2. We can put it into the equation (B-1)

$$D_v \frac{d^2v}{dx^2} - k_v \left( \frac{D_u}{k_u L} \right)^2 = 0. \quad \text{(B-2)}$$

The solution of (B-2) is written as

$$v = C_1 e^{\alpha x} + C_2 e^{-\alpha x},$$

where $C_1$ and $C_2$ are coefficients to determined and $\alpha = \sqrt{\frac{k_v}{D_v} \left( \frac{D_u}{k_u L} \right)^2}$. We need to compute the derivative of $v$ in order to use the Neumann boundary condition at $x=L$.

$$v' = C_1 \alpha e^{\alpha x} - C_2 \alpha e^{-\alpha x}.$$  

We use the Dirichlet boundary condition at $x=0$ which is $v(x=0)=v_0$. 

127
\[ v(x=0) = v_0 \Rightarrow C_1 + C_2 = v_0. \]  
(B-3)

We use the Neumann boundary condition which is \( v'(x=L) = j_v. \)

\[ v'(x = L) = j_v \Rightarrow C_1 e^{at} - C_2 e^{-at} = \frac{j_v}{\alpha}. \]  
(B-4)

We can get \( C_1 \) from equation (B-3).

\[ C_1 = v_0 - C_2. \]  
(B-5)

We can substitute the expression of \( C_1 \) into the equation (B-4).

\[
\left( v_0 - C_2 \right) e^{at} - C_2 e^{-at} = \frac{j_v}{\alpha} \Rightarrow
\]

\[ -C_2 e^{at} - C_2 e^{-at} = \frac{j_v}{\alpha} - v_0 e^{at} \Rightarrow
\]

\[ C_2 \left( -e^{at} - e^{-at} \right) = \frac{j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha} \Rightarrow
\]

\[ C_2 = -\frac{j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)}. \]

We can determine the expression of \( C_1 \) in equation (B-5) since we know \( C_2. \)

\[ C_1 = v_0 + \frac{j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)} = \frac{v_0 \alpha e^{-at} + j_v}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)}. \]

In summary, the coefficients \( C_1 \) and \( C_2 \) are

\[ C_1 = \frac{v_0 \alpha e^{-at} + j_v}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)}, \]

\[ C_2 = -\frac{j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)}. \]

The full solution of \( v \) is

\[ v = \frac{v_0 \alpha e^{-at} + j_v}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)} e^{at} - \frac{j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha \left( e^{at} + e^{-at} \right)} e^{-at}. \]
This can be simplified to

\[ v = \frac{v_0 \alpha e^{-at} + j_v}{\alpha (e^{at} + e^{-at})} \] \( e^{sa} - (j_v - \alpha v_0 e^{at}) e^{-sa} \)

We assume that \( L \) goes to infinity.

\[ v \approx \frac{v_0 \alpha e^{-at} + j_v}{\alpha e^{at}} e^{sa} - \frac{\alpha v_0 e^{at}}{\alpha e^{at}} e^{-sa} \]

\[ v \approx \frac{\alpha v_0 e^{at} e^{-sa}}{\alpha e^{at}} \]

\[ v \approx \frac{j_v e^{-sa}}{\alpha e^{at}} + \frac{\alpha v_0 e^{at} e^{-sa}}{\alpha e^{at}} \]

Therefore:

\[ v \approx v_0 e^{-sa} \]

By putting back the expression of \( \alpha \), \( v \) can be approximated by

\[ v \approx v_0 e^{-\xi} \]

where \( \xi = x/L \). Under the mixed boundary condition when \( L \) is large, the approximation of \( v \) is written as a single exponent.
Appendix C

Annihilation model

In this appendix, we show derivation of the solutions (1-25) and (1-26) discussed in section 1.9.1.

\[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D_u \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - k_u u v \]  
\[ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = D_v \frac{\partial^2 v}{\partial x^2} - k_v u v, \]  
where \(D_u\) and \(D_v\) are the diffusion coefficients and \(k_u\) and \(k_v\) specify the decay rates. \(D_u, D_v, k_u,\) and \(k_v\) are constant. The boundary conditions are:

\[ u(x = 0) = u_0, \quad u(x = L) = u_L, \]
\[ v(x = 0) = v_0, \quad v(x = L) = v_L, \]

where \(u_0\) and \(v_0\) are the boundary values at \(x=0\) and \(u_L\) and \(v_L\) are the boundary values at \(x=L\).

We shall focus on stationary state of equations (C-1) and (C-2).

\[ D_u \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - k_u u v = 0 \]  
\[ D_v \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - k_v u v = 0. \]

By multiplying equation (C-3) and (C-4) respectively by \(k_v\) and \(k_u\). This will give

\[ k_v D_u \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - k_v k_u u v = 0 \]  
\[ k_u D_v \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - k_u k_v u v = 0. \]

After subtracting equation (C-6) from (C-5), this yields

\[ k_v D_u \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - k_u D_v \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left( k_v D_u u - k_u D_v v \right) = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left( k_v D_u u - k_u D_v v \right) = 0. \]

Integrating the above equation twice gives
\[ k_i D_u - k_u D_v = A x + B. \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-7)

Applying the boundary conditions at \( x=0 \) in equation (C-7), gives

\[ B = k_i D_u u_0 - k_u D_v v_0. \]

Using use the boundary conditions at \( x=L \) in equation (C-7).

\[ k_i D_u u_L - k_u D_v v_L = A L + k_i D_u u_0 - k_u D_v v_0. \]

We can get \( A \) from the above equation.

\[ A = \frac{k_i D_u u_L - k_u D_v v_L - k_i D_u u_0 + k_u D_v v_0}{L}. \]

The full solution of equation (C-7) is

\[ k_i D_u - k_u D_v = \left( k_i D_u u_L - k_u D_v v_L - k_i D_u u_0 + k_u D_v v_0 \right) \left( \frac{x}{L} \right) + k_i D_u u_0 - k_u D_v v_0. \]

We want to simplify the problem by considering \( D_u = D_v = D, \) \( k_u = k_v = k, \) \( u_L = v_0 = 0 \) and \( v_L = u_0 \) in equations (C-3) and (C-4).

\[ D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - kuv = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-8)

\[ D \frac{d^2 v}{dx^2} - kuv = 0, \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-9)

with the Dirichlet boundary conditions

\[ u(x = 0) = u_0, \quad u(x = L) = 0, \]
\[ v(x = 0) = 0, \quad v(x = L) = u_0. \]

For quantitative analysis, we will consider the sum and the difference of the two morphogens.

The addition and subtraction of equation (C-8) and (C-9) lead respectively to

\[ D \frac{d^2 (u + v)}{dx^2} - 2kuv = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-10)

\[ D \frac{d^2 (u - v)}{dx^2} = 0. \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-11)
Let \( s_+ = u+v \) and \( s_- = u-v \). Then the equations (C-10) and (C-11), in terms of \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \), will become

\[
\frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} = \frac{2k}{D} uv \tag{C-12}
\]

\[
\frac{d^2 s_-}{dx^2} = 0. \tag{C-13}
\]

The differential equation involving \( s_+ \) (see equation (C-12)), still has a term containing \( u \) and \( v \) namely \( uv \). So, we shall write \( uv \) in terms of \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \).

\[
uv = \frac{(u+v)^2 - (u-v)^2}{4} = \frac{s_+^2 - s_-^2}{4}.
\]

As we can see, \( uv \) is written as the quarter of the difference of the squares of \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \). By putting the expression of \( uv \) in terms of \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \), the equations containing \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \) will be

\[
\frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} = \frac{k(s_+^2 - s_-^2)}{2D} \tag{C-14}
\]

\[
\frac{d^2 s_-}{dx^2} = 0. \tag{C-15}
\]

The boundary conditions associated with \( s_+ \) and \( s_- \) are derived from the boundary conditions associated with \( u \) and \( v \). For \( s_+ \), the boundary conditions at \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \) is the sum of the boundary conditions of \( u \) and \( v \) at these ends. For \( s_- \), it is the difference of the boundary conditions of \( u \) and \( v \) at both \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \).

\[
s_+ (x = 0) = u (x = 0) + v (x = 0) = u_0 \tag{C-16}
\]

\[
s_+ (x = L) = u (x = L) + v (x = L) = u_0 \tag{C-17}
\]

\[
s_- (x = 0) = u (x = 0) - v (x = 0) = u_0 \tag{C-18}
\]

\[
s_- (x = L) = u (x = L) - v (x = L) = -u_0. \tag{C-19}
\]
We can integrate equation (C-15) twice.

\[ D \frac{d^2 s_-}{dx^2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{d^2 s_-}{dx^2} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{ds_-}{dx} = C_1 \Rightarrow s_- = C_1 x + C_2 \]

\[ s_- = C_1 x + C_2. \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-20)

The solution of \( s_- \) (C-20) is a linear profile. We use the boundary conditions involving \( s_- \) to determine the expressions of the coefficients \( C_1 \) and \( C_2 \).

\[ s_-(x = 0) = u_0 \Rightarrow C_2 = u_0 \]

\[ s_-(x = L) = -u_0 \Rightarrow -u_0 = LC_1 + u_0 \Rightarrow 2u_0 = LC_1 \Rightarrow C_1 = -\frac{2u_0}{L}. \]

Using the expression of the constants \( C_1 \) and \( C_2 \), the full solution of \( s_- \) is

\[ s_- = u_0 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right). \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-21)

Coming back to (C-14),

\[ \frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} = \frac{k}{2D} \left( s_+^2 - s_-^2 \right). \]

It is rewritten by putting all the terms containing \( s_+ \) on the left hand side. Knowing the expression of \( s_- \) (C-21), and after its substitution into (C-14), one has

\[ \frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} - \frac{k}{2D} s_+^2 = -\frac{k}{2D} u_0^2 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^2. \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-22)

Multiplying both sides by \( 2D/k \) in equation (C-22) gives

\[ \frac{2D}{k} \frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} - s_+^2 = -u_0^2 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^2. \]

Let \( \beta = 2/\lambda^2 \), where \( \lambda^2 = k/D \). The above equation can be rewritten as

\[ \beta \frac{d^2 s_+}{dx^2} - s_+^2 = -u_0^2 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^2. \]  \hspace{1cm} (C-23)
As \( s_+ \) is the sum of two continuous functions \( u \) and \( v \) (concentrations) in the interval \([0, L]\), it is a continuous function. Since we can’t solve (C-23) analytically we use power series method. \( s_+ \) can be approximated by a polynomial function. So it can be written as

\[
s_+ = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} s_n \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^n.
\]  
(C-24)

We differentiate the above series twice (see equation (C-24)).

\[
s_+^{'} = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} ns_n \left(\frac{2}{L}\right) \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^{n-1}
\]  
(C-25)

\[
s_+^{''} = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n(n-1)s_n \left(\frac{2}{L}\right)^2 \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^{n-2}
\]  
(C-26)

We square the power series of \( s_+ \) (see equation (C-24)).

\[
s_+^2 = \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} s_n \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^n\right)^2.
\]  
(C-27)

We write a few terms from expression (C-26).

\[
s_+^2 = \frac{8s_2}{L^2} + \frac{24s_4}{L^2} \left(1-2\frac{x}{L}\right) + \frac{48s_6}{L^2} \left(1-2\frac{x}{L}\right)^2 + \frac{80s_8}{L^2} \left(1-2\frac{x}{L}\right)^3 + \frac{120s_{10}}{L^2} \left(1-2\frac{x}{L}\right)^4 + \frac{168s_{12}}{L^2} \left(1-2\frac{x}{L}\right)^5 + \cdots
\]

Similarly, we write a few terms from expression (C-27).

\[
s_+^2 = s_0^2 + 2s_0s_1 \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right) + \left(s_1^2 + 2s_0s_2\right) \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^2 + \left(2s_0s_3 + 2s_1s_2\right) \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^3 + \\
+ \left(s_2^2 + 2s_1s_3 + 2s_0s_4\right) \left(1-\frac{x}{L}\right)^4 + \cdots
\]

Substituting all of the terms in (C-23) gives
\[ \beta \left( \frac{8s_2}{L^2} + \frac{24s_4}{L^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right) + \frac{48s_6}{L^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^2 + \frac{80s_8}{L^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^3 + \frac{120s_{10}}{L^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^4 + \frac{168s_{12}}{L^2} \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^5 + \cdots \right) \\
- \left( s_2 + 2s_4 \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right) + (s_4^2 + 2s_6s_2) \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^2 + (2s_6s_3 + 2s_8s_2) \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^3 + \cdots \right) = -u_0^2 \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^2. \]

Identify the coefficients of different powers of \(1 - \frac{2x}{L}\) at both sides of the equality,

\[
\begin{align*}
\left[ 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right]^0 : & \quad \frac{8\beta s_2}{L^2} - s_0^2 = 0 \tag{C-28} \\
\left[ 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right]^2 : & \quad \frac{24\beta s_4}{L^2} - 2s_0s_1 = 0 \tag{C-29} \\
\left[ 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right]^3 : & \quad \frac{48\beta s_6}{L^2} - (s_1^2 + 2s_0s_2) = -u_0^2 \tag{C-30} \\
\left[ 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right]^4 : & \quad \frac{80\beta s_8}{L^2} - (2s_0s_3 + 2s_1s_2) = 0 \tag{C-31} \\
\left[ 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right]^5 : & \quad \frac{120\beta s_{10}}{L^2} - (s_2^2 + 2s_0s_4 + 2s_1s_3) = 0. \tag{C-32}
\end{align*}
\]

Assuming that \(u_0 = v_L\), \(s_\ast\) has a minimum at \(x = \frac{L}{2}\). We write a few terms of equation (C-25).

\[
s_\ast' = -\frac{2}{L} s_1 - \frac{4}{L} s_2 \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right) - \frac{6}{L} s_3 \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^2 - \frac{8}{L} s_4 \left( 1 - \frac{2x}{L} \right)^3 - \cdots
\]

We substitute \(x = \frac{L}{2}\) into this series

\[
s_\ast' \left( x = \frac{L}{2} \right) = 0 \Rightarrow s_1 = 0.
\]

Putting \(s_1 = 0\) in equation (C-29) will imply that \(s_3 = 0\). Substituting \(s_1 = 0\) and \(s_3 = 0\) in equation (C-31) will lead to \(s_5 = 0\) and so on. In general, the coefficients \(s_{2n+1}\) are equal to 0, where \(n \in \mathbb{N}\). The solution of \(s_\ast\) is written in the form

\[135\]
\[ s_4 = s_0 + s_2 \left(1 - 2 \frac{x}{L}\right)^2 + s_4 \left(1 - 2 \frac{x}{L}\right)^4 + s_6 \left(1 - 2 \frac{x}{L}\right)^6 + \cdots \]  
(C-33)

We can write \( s_2 \) in terms of \( s_0 \) from expression (C-28).

\[ \frac{8\beta s_2}{L^2} - s_0^2 = 0 \]

\[ s_2 = \frac{L^2 s_0^2}{8\beta} \Rightarrow s_2 = \frac{L^2 s_0^2}{8 \left(\frac{2}{\lambda^2}\right)} \Rightarrow \]

Therefore

\[ s_2 = \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2}{16}. \]

The coefficient \( s_4 \) can be determined from expression (C-30).

\[ \frac{48\beta s_4}{L^2} - 2s_0 s_2 = -u_0^2 \]

\[ s_4 = \frac{L^2 \left(2s_0 s_2 - u_0^2\right)}{48\beta} \Rightarrow s_4 = \frac{L^2 \left(2s_0 \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2}{16} - u_0^2\right)}{48 \left(\frac{2}{\lambda^2}\right)} \Rightarrow s_4 = \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 \left(2\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2 - 16u_0^2\right)}{1536} \Rightarrow \]

Therefore

\[ s_4 = \frac{s_0^3 L^4 \lambda^4 - 8L^2 u_0^2 \lambda^2}{768} \]

The coefficient \( s_6 \) can be obtained from expression (C-32).

\[ \frac{120\beta}{L^2} s_6 - \left(s_2^2 + 2s_0 s_4\right) = 0 \Rightarrow s_6 = \frac{L^2 \left(s_2^2 + 2s_0 s_4\right)}{120\beta} \Rightarrow s_6 = \frac{L^2 \left(\left(\frac{\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2}{16}\right)^2 + 2s_0 \left(s_0^3 L^4 \lambda^4 - 8L^2 u_0^2 \lambda^2/768\right)\right)}{120 \left(\frac{2}{\lambda^2}\right)} \Rightarrow \]
\[
\lambda^2 L^2 \left( \frac{\lambda^4 L^4 s_0^4 + 2\lambda^4 L^4 s_0^4 - 16s_0 \lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{256} \right) \Rightarrow s_6 = \frac{1}{240} \lambda^2 L^2 \left( \frac{5\lambda^4 L^4 s_0^4 - 16s_0 \lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{768} \right) \Rightarrow
\]
\[
s_6 = \frac{240}{768} \lambda^2 L^2 \left( \frac{5\lambda^4 L^4 s_0^4 - 16s_0 \lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{768} \right)
\]

Therefore

\[
s_6 = \frac{5s_0^4 \lambda^6 - 16s_0 u_0^2 \lambda^2 L^4}{184320}
\]

Now assume that \( \lambda^2 = k/D << 1 \). The coefficients \( s_6, s_8, s_{10} \), etc will have terms containing \( \lambda^2 \) of higher degree. Therefore, equation (C-33) can be approximated as

\[
s_+ \approx s_0 + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2}{16} \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^2 - \lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2 \left( 1 - 2 \frac{x}{L} \right)^4 \quad \text{(C-34)}
\]

In order to determine the expression of \( s_0 \) in equation (C-34), we need to use the boundary conditions either at \( x=0 \) or \( x=L \) (see equation (C-16) or (C17)).

\[
u_0 = s_0 + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 s_0^2}{16} - \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} \quad \text{(C-35)}
\]

We rearrange equation (C-35) in order to have a quadratic equation in \( s_0 \).

\[
\frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16} s_0^2 + s_0 - \left( u_0 + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} \right) = 0 \quad \text{(C-36)}
\]

We have two possible solutions of \( s_0 \) from equation (C-36).

\[
s_0 = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 + 4 \left( \frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16} \right) \left( u_0 + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} \right)}}{2 \frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16}} \quad \text{(C-37)}
\]

The positive solution of equation (C-37) can be approximated by

\[
s_0 = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) \quad \text{(C-38)}
\]
Using (C-38), the expression of $s_+$ from (C-34) becomes

$$s_+ = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right)^2 \left( 1 - \frac{x}{L} \right)^2 - \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} \left( 1 - \frac{x}{L} \right)^4 \right). \quad (C-39)$$

After further simplifications, (C-39) can be written as

$$s_+ = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right)^2 \left( 1 - \frac{x}{L} \right)^2 - \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} \left( 1 - \frac{x}{L} \right)^4.$$

In summary, the solutions of $s_-$ is given by

$$s_- = u_0 (1 - 2\xi)$$

and $s_+$ is approximated by

$$s_+ = \frac{8}{\lambda^2 L^2} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right) + \frac{\lambda^2 L^2}{16} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{u_0 \lambda^2 L^2}{4}} \right)^2 \left( 1 - \frac{x}{L} \right)^2 - \frac{\lambda^2 L^2 u_0^2}{96} (1 - 2\xi)^4,$$

where $\xi = x/L$, $\lambda^2 = k/D$ and $u_0$ is the boundary value from the boundary conditions (C-16) to (C-19). These formulae are used in the section 2.6.
Appendix D
Scaling of exponential profile (Second Mechanism)

In chapter 2, the morphogen with concentration \( u \) is produced and diffuses. We assume that the morphogen decays in a region of size \( a \) in the middle. In this appendix, we shall derive three solutions of \( u \): One solution coming from region (2) and two other solutions coming from region (1). From these solutions, we can show that all of them are proportional to the size of the domain.

In region (1), we have

\[
D_u \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} + p = 0.
\]

In region (2), we have

\[
D_u \frac{d^2u}{dx^2} - k_u u + p = 0.
\]

The solution in region (1) for \( x \) between 0 and \((L-a)/2\) is written as

\[
u_1 = -\frac{p}{2D_u} x^2 + Cx + D.
\]  \hspace{1cm} (D-1)

The solution in region (2) is written as

\[
u_2 = A e^{k_x} + B e^{-k_x} + \frac{p}{k_u}.
\]  \hspace{1cm} (D-2)

The solution in region (1) for \( x \) between \((L+a)/2\) and \( L \) is written as
In solution (D-2), \( \lambda = (k_u/D_u)^{1/2} \). Since we have six unknowns \( (A, B, C, D, E \text{ and } F) \), we need six conditions. The first two conditions are the boundary fluxes at \( x=0 \) and \( x=L \): \( u_1'(0) = u_3'(L) = 0 \). Two are the continuity at \( x=(L-a)/2 \) and \( x=(L+a)/2 \). And the other two are the derivative at \( x=(L-a)/2 \) and \( x=(L+a)/2 \). Let’s use the first two conditions \( u_1'(0) = u_3'(L) = 0 \). We need to derive solution (D-1).

\[
u_1' = -\frac{p}{D_u} x + C.
\]

By using \( u_1'(0) = 0 \), we see that \( C = 0 \). Hence, the solution (D-1) is

\[
u_1 = -\frac{p}{2D_u} x^2 + D.
\]

We need to derive the expression (D-3)

\[
u_3' = -\frac{p}{D_u} x + E.
\]

We use \( u_3'(L) = 0 \).

\[0 = -\frac{p}{D_u} L + E \Rightarrow E = \frac{pL}{D_u}.
\]

So far the solution of \( u_3 \) is written as

\[
u_3 = -\frac{p}{2D_u} x^2 + \frac{pL}{D_u} x + F.
\]

We use the continuity at \( x=(L-a)/2 \) and \( x=(L+a)/2 \). First \( u_1((L-a)/2) = u_2((L-a)/2) \)

\[
-p \frac{D_u}{(L-a)/2} + D = A e^{-\frac{(L-a)/2}{2}} + B e^{-\frac{(L-a)/2}{2}} + \frac{p}{k_u}.
\]

Second \( u_2((L+a)/2) = u_3((L+a)/2) \)

\[
-p \frac{D_u}{(L+a)/2} + pL \frac{D_u}{(L+a)/2} + F = A e^{-\frac{(L+a)/2}{2}} + B e^{-\frac{(L+a)/2}{2}} + \frac{p}{k_u}.
\]

Third, by equating the derivatives of \( u_1 \) and \( u_2 \) at \( x=(L-a)/2 \), we obtain
\[-\frac{p}{\lambda D_a} \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) = Ae^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} - Be^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda}. \]  

(D-6)

Similarly, by equating the derivatives of \( u_2 \) and \( u_3 \) at \( x=(L+a)/2 \), we obtain

\[-\frac{p}{\lambda D_a} \left( \frac{L+a}{2} \right) + \frac{pL}{\lambda D_a} = Ae^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda} - Be^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda}. \]  

(D-7)

Multiply (D-6) by \( e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} \).

\[-\frac{p(L-a)e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda}}{2\lambda D_a} = Ae^{(L-a)\lambda} - B. \]  

(D-8)

Multiply (D-7) by \( e^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda} \).

\[\frac{p(L-a)e^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda}}{2\lambda D_a} = Ae^{(L+a)\lambda} - B. \]  

(D-9)

Subtract (D-9) from (D-8).

\[A \left( e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda} \right) = -\frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_a} \left( e^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda} + e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} \right). \]

We can deduce \( A \) from above.

\[A = -\frac{p(L-a) \left( e^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda} + e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_a \left( e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda} \right)}. \]

Putting the expression of \( A \) into (D-6)

\[-\frac{p}{\lambda D_a} \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) = -\frac{p(L-a) \left( e^{\frac{(L+a)}{2}\lambda} + e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_a \left( e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda} \right)} e^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda} - Be^{\frac{(L-a)}{2}\lambda}. \]

From above \( B \) can be written as
\[
B = \left(-p \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right)^2 \right) + D = -\frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\left( \frac{L+a}{2} \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} + \frac{p(L-a)}{\lambda D_u} e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda}.
\]

We can simplify the above expression

\[
B = -\frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L+a) \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L-a) \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} + \frac{p(L-a)}{\lambda D_u} e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda}.
\]

Since we know \( A \) and \( B \), we can determine the coefficient \( D \) from equation (D-4).

\[
-\frac{p}{2D_u} \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right)^2 + D = -\frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\left( \frac{L+a}{2} \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} - \frac{p}{\lambda D_u} \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \left( e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L+a) \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L-a) \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} + \frac{p}{k_u}.
\]

From above \( D \) can be written as

\[
D = -\frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\left( \frac{L+a}{2} \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} - \frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L+a) \right) \lambda} + e^{\left( \frac{2}{2} (L-a) \right) \lambda} \right) e^{\left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right) \lambda} + \frac{p}{2D_u} \left( \frac{L-a}{2} \right)^2.
\]

This gives after further simplification.
\[
D = \frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{L\lambda} + e^{(L-a)\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} - \frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{\lambda(L-a)} + e^{L\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} + \frac{p(L-a)^2}{k_u} + \frac{p(L-a)}{8D_u}.
\]

The full solution of \(u_1\) is then
\[
u_1 = \frac{-p}{2D_u} \left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{pL}{D_u} \left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right) + F = \frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{\left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)\lambda} + e^{\left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} - \frac{p(L-a) \left(\frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}} + \frac{\lambda(L-a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}}\right)}{\lambda D_u} \left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{p}{k_u}
\]

and the full solution of \(u_2\) is
\[
u_2 = \left(\frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{\left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)\lambda} + e^{\left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} - \frac{p(L-a) \left(\frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}} + \frac{\lambda(L-a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}}\right)}{\lambda D_u} \left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{p}{k_u}\right)e^{\lambda x} + \frac{p}{k_u}.
\]

We can determine the expression of \(F\) in equation (D-5).

\[
F = -\frac{p}{2D_u} \left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{pL}{D_u} \left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right) + F = \frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{\left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)\lambda} + e^{\left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} - \frac{p(L-a) \left(\frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}} + \frac{\lambda(L-a)}{e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}}\right)}{\lambda D_u} \left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{p}{k_u}
\]

We can simplify the above expression
\[
F = \frac{-p(L-a) \left(e^{\left(\frac{L+a}{2}\right)\lambda} + e^{\left(\frac{L-a}{2}\right)\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} - \frac{p(L-a) \left(e^{\lambda(L-a)} + e^{L\lambda}\right)}{2\lambda D_u \left(e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda}\right)} + \frac{p(L-a)^2}{k_u} + \frac{p(L+a)}{8D_u} - \frac{pL(L+a)}{2D_u}.
\]

Therefore the full solution of \(u_3\) is written as
\[ u_3 = -\frac{p}{2D_u} x^2 + \frac{pL}{D_u} x - \frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{(L-a)\lambda} + e^{L\lambda} \right) - \frac{p(L-a)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{L\lambda} + e^{(L-a)\lambda} \right) + \frac{p}{k_u} + \frac{p(L+a)^2}{8D_u} - \frac{pL(L+a)}{2D_u}. \]

Our three simplified functions are represented as

\[ u_1(x) = p \left( -\frac{x^2}{2D_u} - \frac{(L-a)\left( 2 + e^{-a\lambda} + e^{a\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{-a\lambda} - e^{a\lambda} \right) + \frac{1}{k_u} + \frac{(L-a)^2}{8D_u} \right) \]

\[ u_2(x) = p \left( -\frac{(L-a)\left( \frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^{\lambda x}} + \frac{\lambda(L-a)}{e^{-\lambda x}} \right)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{\lambda x} + e^{\lambda(L-x)} \right) + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) \]

\[ u_3(x) = p \left( -\frac{x^2}{2D_u} + \frac{Lx}{D_u} - \frac{(L-a)\left( 2 + e^{-a\lambda} + e^{a\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{-a\lambda} - e^{a\lambda} \right) + \frac{1}{k_u} + \frac{(L+a)^2}{8D_u} - \frac{L(L+a)}{2D_u} \right). \]

Assume that \( D_u \) is large then \( u_1 \) can be approximated by

\[ u_1 \approx p \left( -\frac{(L-a)\left( 2 + e^{-a\lambda} + e^{a\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( e^{-a\lambda} - e^{a\lambda} \right) + \frac{1}{k_u} \right). \]  \hspace{1cm} (D-10)

Assume that \( a \) and \( \lambda \) are very small, then

\[ e^{-a\lambda} \approx 1 - a\lambda \]
\[ e^{a\lambda} \approx 1 + a\lambda \]

\[ u_1 \approx p \left( -\frac{(L-a)\left( 2 + 1 - a\lambda + 1 + a\lambda \right)}{2\lambda D_u} \left( 1 - a\lambda - 1 - a\lambda \right) + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) \]

\[ u_1 \approx p \left( \frac{4(L-a)}{4\lambda D_u a\lambda} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) \]

\[ u_1 \approx p \left( \frac{L-a}{ak_u} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) \]

\[ u_1 \approx p \left( \frac{L}{ak_u} - \frac{1}{k_u} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) = \frac{pL}{ak_u} \]
\[ u_1 \approx \frac{pL}{ak_u} \] \hspace{1cm} (D-11)

Assume that \( D_u \) is large then \( u_3 \) can be approximated by
\[ u_3 \approx p \left[ - \frac{(L-a) \left( 2 + e^{-a\lambda} + e^{a\lambda} \right)}{2\lambda D_u \left( e^{-a\lambda} - e^{a\lambda} \right)} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right]. \]

This is identical to the approximation of \( u_1 \) (see (D-10)). Therefore \( u_3 \) can be approximated by
\[ u_3 \approx \frac{pL}{ak_u} \] \hspace{1cm} (D-12)

Let’s come back to the solution \( u_2 \).
\[ u_2 = p \left\{ - \frac{(L-a) \left( \frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^\frac{\lambda(L+a)}{2}} + e^\frac{\lambda(L-a)}{2} \right) \left( e^{\lambda x} + e^{\lambda(L-x)} \right)}{2\lambda D_u \left( e^{(L-a)\lambda} - e^{(L+a)\lambda} \right)} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right\}. \]

Assume that \( D_u \) is large then \( u_2 \) can be approximated by taking the following approximations of terms occurring in the above equation:
\[ \frac{\lambda(L+a)}{e^\frac{\lambda(L+a)}{2}} + e^\frac{\lambda(L-a)}{2} \approx \left( 1 + \frac{\lambda(L+a)}{2} + \frac{\lambda(L-a)}{2} \right) = 2 + L\lambda \]
\[ e^{\lambda x} + e^{\lambda(L-x)} \approx 1 + \lambda x + 1 + \lambda(L-x) = 2 + L\lambda \]

and therefore:
\[ u_2 \approx p \left\{ - \frac{(L-a) \left( 2 + L\lambda \right)^2}{2\lambda D_u \left( -2a\lambda \right)} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right\} \]

which can be further approximated as:
\[ u_2 \approx p \left\{ - \frac{(L-a) \left( 2 + \frac{L\lambda}{2} \right)^2}{2\lambda D_u \left( -2a\lambda \right)} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right\} \approx p \left( \frac{(L-a)(1+L\lambda)}{ak_u} + \frac{1}{k_u} \right) \approx \frac{pL}{ak_u}. \]
In this appendix, there are three solutions of $u$ ($u_1$, $u_2$, and $u_3$). When the diffusion is large or the decay is small, all solutions level up and are proportional to the size of the medium. This allows for the solution of the second variable $v$ (see (2-24)) to be scaled.

We see that the approximations (D-11), (D-12) and (D-13) are proportional to the size of the medium.
Appendix E

Nuclear trapping model

(Mixed boundary condition)

In chapter 2, part of Bicoid molecules is located in the syncytium and freely diffuse, while another part is bounded by the nuclei. Let $u$ be the molecules which are moving with diffusivity $D$ in syncytium, and $v$ be the bounded molecule where it is confined to the nucleus and can be considered immobile. In this appendix, we want to show that $u$ scales with the mixed boundary condition.

\[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - uk_u - \rho (uk_1 - vk_2) \]  
(E-1)

\[ \frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = uk_1 - vk_2 - vk_v. \]  
(E-2)

Equating (E-2) to zero, we will have

\[ uk_1 - vk_2 - vk_v = 0 \Rightarrow uk_1 - v(k_2 + k_v) = 0 \Rightarrow \]

\[ v = \frac{uk_1}{k_2 + k_v}. \]  
(E-3)

Equating (E-1) to zero and using the expression of $v$ from equation (E-3), we obtain

\[ D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - uk_u - \rho \left( \frac{uk_1 - \frac{uk_i k_2}{k_2 + k_v}}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = 0 \Rightarrow D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - uk_u - \rho \left( \frac{k_1 k_v}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = 0 \Rightarrow \]

\[ D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( \frac{k_u (k_2 + k_v) + \rho k_i k_v}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = 0 \Rightarrow \]

\[ \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( \frac{k_u (k_2 + k_v) + \rho k_i k_v}{D (k_2 + k_v)} \right) = 0. \]  
(E-4)

The characteristic of equation (E-4) is

\[ m^2 - \beta = 0 \Rightarrow m^2 = \beta \Rightarrow m = \pm \sqrt{\beta}, \]

where
The solution $u(x)$ from equation (E-4) is written as

$$u(x) = Ae^{x\sqrt{\beta}} + Be^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}.$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(E-5)}$$

We apply the mixed boundary conditions which are $u(x=0)=1$ and $u'(x=L)=0$. Using the first boundary condition $u(x=0)=1$, we have

$$u(0) = A + B = 1. \hspace{1cm} \text{(E-6)}$$

Using the second boundary condition $u'(x=L)=0$, we obtain

$$u'(L) = Ae^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - Be^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} = 0.$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(E-7)}$$

We can, for example, get $B$ from equation (E-6).

$$B = 1 - A. \hspace{1cm} \text{(E-8)}$$

Substitute $B$, from equation (E-8), into equation (E-7).

$$A e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - (1 - A) e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} = Ae^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} + Ae^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} = A \left( e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} \right) - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow A \left( e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} \right) = e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}$$

Therefore

$$A = \frac{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}. $$

We can now compute the coefficient $B$ in equation (E-8)

$$B = 1 - \frac{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} = \frac{\left( e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} \right) - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} = \frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}. $$

In summary, the coefficient of $A$ and $B$ are

$$A = \frac{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}},$$

$$B = \frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}. $$

The full solution of $u(x)$ from equation (E-5) is written as
\[ u(x) = \frac{e^{(x-L)\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{(L-x)\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}. \]  

(E-9)

As \( L \) tends to infinity, \( u(x) \) from equation (E-9) can be approximated as

\[ u(x) \approx \frac{e^{(x-L)\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{(L-x)\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} = \frac{e^{x\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{2L\sqrt{\beta}}} + e^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}. \]

Therefore, the expression of \( u(x) \) can be approximated as

\[ u(x) = e^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}. \]  

(E-10)

By putting the expression of \( \beta \) in equation (E-10), \( u(x) \) is represented as

\[ u(x) \approx e^{-\sqrt{\frac{k_u(k_2+k_v)+\rho k_1 k_v}{D(k_2+k_v)}}}. \]

Here if \( k_u \) tends to 0 and \( \rho=N/L^2 \) then \( u(x) \) can be approximated as

\[ u(x) \approx e^{-\sqrt{\frac{N k_1 k_v}{D(k_2+k_v)}}}. \]  

(E-11)

i.e. \( u(x) \) does scales. The formal quantity to measure scaling of morphogen gradient is given by

\[ S = -\left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial L} \right) \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right)^{-1}. \]

Since \( \xi=x/L \), the solution of \( u(x) \) from equation (E-11) can be written as

\[ u \approx e^{-\sqrt{\frac{N k_1 k_v}{D(k_2+k_v)}}}. \]

The calculation of the derivatives of \( u \) with respect to \( \xi \) and \( L \) gives

\[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial L} = 0 \]

\[ \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} = -\sqrt{\frac{N k_1 k_v}{D(k_2+k_v)}} e^{-\xi \sqrt{\frac{N k_1 k_v}{D(k_2+k_v)}}} \]

\[ S = 0 \]

149
which shows a perfect scaling. Thus under the mixed boundary condition when $L$ tends to infinity scaling tends to be perfect ($S \to 0$).
Appendix F

Nuclear trapping model

(Neumann boundary condition)

This is similar to the previous appendix except that we use Neumann boundary condition.

From here we show that the solution $u$ doesn’t scale.

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - u k_1 - \rho (uk_1 - v k_2) \tag{F-1}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = u k_1 - v k_2 - v k_v, \tag{F-2}
\]

Equating (F-2) to zero, we will have

\[
uk_1 - v k_2 - v k_v = 0 \implies uk_1 - v (k_2 + k_v) = 0
\]

\[
v = \frac{uk_1}{k_2 + k_v}. \tag{F-3}
\]

Equating (F-1) to zero and putting the expression of $v$ from equation (F-3), we obtain

\[
D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u k_1 - \rho \left( \frac{uk_1}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = 0 \implies D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u k_1 - \rho \left( \frac{k_1}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = 0 \implies
\]

\[
D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( k_1 + \frac{\rho k_1 k_v}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( \frac{k_1 (k_2 + k_v)}{k_2 + k_v} + \rho k_1 k_v \right) = 0 \implies
\]

\[
D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( k_1 + \frac{\rho k_1 k_v}{k_2 + k_v} \right) = D \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \left( \frac{k_1 (k_2 + k_v)}{k_2 + k_v} + \rho k_1 k_v \right) = 0 \implies
\]

\[
\frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} - u \frac{k_1 (k_2 + k_v) + \rho k_1 k_v}{D (k_2 + k_v)} = 0. \tag{F-4}
\]

The characteristic of equation (F-4) is

\[
m^2 - \beta = 0 \implies m^2 = \beta \implies m = \pm \sqrt{\beta}
\]
where
\[
\beta = \frac{k_1(k_3 + k_4) + \rho k_2 k_4}{D(k_3 + k_4)}.
\]

The solution \( u(x) \) from equation (F-4) is written as
\[
u(x) = Ae^{x\sqrt{\beta}} + Be^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}. \tag{F-5} \]

We use the Neumann boundary conditions which are \((u(x=0))' = -\gamma \) and \((u(x=L))' = 0.\) We need to compute the derivative of \( u(x) \) from equation (F-5).
\[
(u(x))' = A\sqrt{\beta}e^{x\sqrt{\beta}} - B\sqrt{\beta}e^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}. \tag{F-6}
\]

Using the first boundary condition \((u(x=0))' = -\gamma,\) equation (F-6) is written as
\[
A - B = -\frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}}. \tag{F-7}
\]

Using the second boundary condition, \((u(x=L))' = 0,\) equation (F-6) is written as
\[
Ae^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - Be^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} = 0. \tag{F-8}
\]

We can, for example, get \(A\), from equation (F-7)
\[
A = B - \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}}. \tag{F-9}
\]

Substitute \(A\), from equation (F-9), into equation (F-8)
\[
\Rightarrow B\left(e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}\right) = -\frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} \Rightarrow B = -\frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left(\frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}\right).
\]

We can now compute the coefficient \(A\) in equation (F-9).
\[
A = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left(\frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}\right) - \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left(\frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} - 1\right) = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left(\frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} - \frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}\right) \Rightarrow
\]
\[
\Rightarrow A = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left(\frac{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}\right).
\]
In summary, the coefficients of $A$ and $B$ are

$$A = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left( \frac{e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} \right)$$

$$B = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} \left( \frac{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}}}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} \right).$$

The full solution $u(x)$ from equation (F-5) is written as

$$u(x) = \frac{\gamma\left( e^{(x-L)\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{(L-x)\sqrt{\beta}} \right)}{\sqrt{\beta} \left( e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}} \right)}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (F-10)

As $L$ tends to infinity, $u(x)$ from equation (F-10), can be approximated as

$$u(x) \approx \frac{\gamma\left( e^{(x-L)\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{(L-x)\sqrt{\beta}} \right)}{e^{L\sqrt{\beta}} - e^{-L\sqrt{\beta}}} = \frac{\gamma \left( e^{x\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-x\sqrt{\beta}} \right)}{\sqrt{\beta} \left( e^{2L\sqrt{\beta}} + e^{-2\sqrt{\beta}} \right)}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (F-11)

Therefore, the solution of $u(x)$ can be approximated as

$$u(x) \approx \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\beta}} e^{-x\sqrt{\beta}}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (F-11)

By putting the expression of $\beta$, $u(x)$ from equation (F-11), can be represented as

$$u(x) \approx \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{k_{_2} + k_{_y}}} e^{-x \sqrt{\frac{k_{_u} (k_{_2} + k_{_y}) + \rho k_{_1} k_{_y}}{D(k_{_2} + k_{_y})}}}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (F-12)

Here if $k_{_y}$ tends to 0 and $\rho = N/L^2$ then $u(x)$, from equation (F-12), can be approximated as

$$u(x) \approx L \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{\frac{Nk_{_1}k_{_y}}{D(k_{_2} + k_{_y})}}} e^{-x \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{_1}k_{_y}}{D(k_{_2} + k_{_y})}}}.$$  \hspace{1cm} (F-12)

We can replace $x/L$ by $\xi$. The solution of $u(x)$ will be written as
The formal quantity to measure scaling of morphogen gradient is given by

\[ S = - \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial L} \right) \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right)^{-1}. \]

Let’s compute the scaling factor of equation (F-13). We differentiate \( u \) with respect to \( L \) and \( \xi \).

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial L} = \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{Nk_{1k_{v}}}} e^{-\xi \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}}} \]

\[
\frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} = -L\gamma e^{-\xi \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}}} \Rightarrow \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial \xi} \right)^{-1} = -e^{\xi \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}}} \]

\[
S = -\left( \frac{\gamma}{\sqrt{Nk_{1k_{v}}}} e^{-\xi \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}}} \right) \left( -\frac{\xi \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}}}{L\gamma} \right) = \frac{1}{L} \sqrt{\frac{Nk_{1k_{v}}}{D(k_{2}+k_{v})}} \neq 0.
\]

The above scaling factor formula depends on parameters in contrast with the formula which was derived in the previous appendix. Scaling occurs if \( L, N, k_{1} \text{ or } k_{v} \) is large. Alternatively, we can achieve scaling if \( D \text{ or } k_{2}+k_{v} \) is very small.
Appendix G

Rule 30

In chapter 4, we have proved that, for the cases of transition rules 15 and 85, they will take two-time steps to produce a new stripe 101. In this appendix, we want to show that if we start with 1xxxxx for the case of transition rule 30, it will take nine-time steps to produce a stripe 101.

30=00011110

(000)→(000)
(001)→(011)
(010)→(010)
(011)→(011)
(100)→(110)
(101)→(101)
(110)→(100)
(111)→(101)

Case A: 10000x.

10000x→11000x→101x. (2TS)

Case B: 10001x.

10001x→11011x→10010x→1111x→1000x→110x→10x. We need more elements.

Case B₁: 100010x.

100010x→11011x→10010x→1111x→1000x→110x→10x. We need more elements.

Case B₁₁: 1000100x.

1000100x→110111x→100100x→11111x→10000x→1100x→101x. (6TS)

Case B₁₂: 1000101x.

1000101x→1101101x→1001001x→111111x→1000000x→110000x→10100x. (6TS)
**Case B**_2_: 100011x.

100011x→110110x→10010x→1111x→1000x→110x→10x. **We need more elements.**

**Case B**_21_: 100010x.

100010x→110110x→10011x→11110x→1000x→110x→10x. **We need more elements.**

**Case B**_211_: 1000100x.

1000100x→110100x→100111x→1111010x→1000010x→1100x→101x. (6TS)

**Case B**_212_: 1000101x.

1000101x→1101101x→1001011x→11110100x→1000010x→110011x→101110x. (6TS)

**Case B**_22_: 100011x.

100011x→1101100x→100101x→111101x→10001x→110011x→101110x. (6TS)

**Case C**: 10010x.

10010x→1111x→1000x→110x→10x. **We need more elements.**

**Case C**_1_: 100100x.

100100x→11111x→10000x→1100x→101x. (4TS)

**Case C**_2_: 100101x.

100101x→111101x→10001x→110011x→101110x. (4TS)

**Case D**: 10011x.

10011x→11110x→1000x→110x→10x. **We need more elements.**
Case $D_1$: 100110$x$.

\[100110^x \rightarrow 11110^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need more elements.}\]

Case $D_{11}$: 1001100$x$.

\[1001100^x \rightarrow 111101^x \rightarrow 100001^x \rightarrow 110011^x \rightarrow 101110^x. (4TS)\]

Case $D_{12}$: 1001101$x$.

\[1001101^x \rightarrow 1111001^x \rightarrow 1000111^x \rightarrow 1101100^x \rightarrow 100100^x \rightarrow 111111^x \rightarrow 10000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 101^x. (8TS)\]

Case $D_2$: 100111$x$.

\[100111^x \rightarrow 1111000^x \rightarrow 10001^x \rightarrow 11011^x \rightarrow 10010^x \rightarrow 1111^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need more elements.}\]

Case $D_{21}$: 1001110$x$.

\[1001110^x \rightarrow 1111000^x \rightarrow 10001^x \rightarrow 11011^x \rightarrow 10010^x \rightarrow 1111^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need more elements.}\]

Case $D_{211}$: 10011100$x$.

\[10011100^x \rightarrow 1111001^x \rightarrow 100011^x \rightarrow 110110^x \rightarrow 100101^x \rightarrow 111101^x \rightarrow 100001^x \rightarrow 110011^x \rightarrow 101110^x. (8TS)\]

Case $D_{212}$: 10011101$x$.

\[10011101^x \rightarrow 11110001^x \rightarrow 10001011^x \rightarrow 11011010^x \rightarrow 1001001^x \rightarrow 1111111^x \rightarrow 1000000^x \rightarrow 110000^x \rightarrow 10100^x. (8TS)\]

Case $D_{22}$: 1001111$x$.

\[1001111^x \rightarrow 1111000^x \rightarrow 10001^x \rightarrow 11011^x \rightarrow 10010^x \rightarrow 1111^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need consider more elements.}\]

Case $D_{221}$: 10011110$x$.

\[10011110^x \rightarrow 1111000^x \rightarrow 10001^x \rightarrow 11011^x \rightarrow 10010^x \rightarrow 1111^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need more elements.}\]

Case $D_{2211}$: 100111100$x$.

\[100111100^x \rightarrow 1111000^x \rightarrow 10001^x \rightarrow 11011^x \rightarrow 10010^x \rightarrow 1111^x \rightarrow 1000^x \rightarrow 110^x \rightarrow 10^x. \text{ We need more elements.}\]
10011100x→1111001x→10001011x→11011010x→1001001x→1111111x→1000000x→110000x→10100x. (8TS)

Case D_{2212}: 100111101x.
100111101x→111100001x→100010011x→110111110x→10010000x→1111100x→10001x
→110011x→101110x. (8TS)

Case D_{222}: 100111111x.
100111111x→11110000x→1000100x→110111x→100100x→11111x
→1000x→1100x→101x. (8TS)

Case E-H: For the cases of 10100x, 10101x, 10110x and 10111x, the time step to reach 101 is 0.

Case I: 11000x.
11000x→1010x. (1TS)

Case J: 11001x.
11001x→1011x. (1TS)

Case K: 11010x.
11010x→1001x→1111x→100x→110x→10x. We need to consider more elements.

Case K_{i}: 110100x.
110100x→10011x→11110x→1000x→110x→10x. We need more elements.

Case K_{ii}: 1101000x.
1101000x→100110x→11110x→1000x→110x→10x. We need more elements.

Case K_{iii}: 11010000x.
11010000x→1001100x→111101x→100001x→110011x→101110x. (5TS)
Case $K_{112}$: \(1101001x\).
\[
1101001x \rightarrow 1001101x \rightarrow 1111010x \rightarrow 1000111x \rightarrow 110100x \rightarrow 100100x \\
\rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101x. \text{ (9TS)*}
\]

Case $K_{12}$: \(110101x\).
\[
1101001x \rightarrow 1001101x \rightarrow 11110010x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101100x. \text{ (2TS)}
\]

Case $K_2$: \(110101x\).
\[
110101x \rightarrow 100101x \rightarrow 1111011x \rightarrow 1000111x \rightarrow 1101110x. \text{ (5TS)}
\]

Case $L$: \(11011x\).
\[
11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \text{ We need more elements.}
\]

Case $L_1$: \(110110x\).
\[
110110x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \text{ We need more elements.}
\]

Case $L_{11}$: \(1101100x\).
\[
1101100x \rightarrow 100100x \rightarrow 11111x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101x. \text{ (5TS)}
\]

Case $L_{12}$: \(1101101x\).
\[
1101101x \rightarrow 1001001x \rightarrow 111111x \rightarrow 1000000x \rightarrow 110000x \rightarrow 10100x. \text{ (5TS)}
\]

Case $L_2$: \(110111x\).
\[
110111x \rightarrow 100100x \rightarrow 11111x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101x. \text{ (5TS)}
\]

Case $M$: \(11100x\).
\[
11100x \rightarrow 1001x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \text{ We need more elements.}
\]

Case $M_1$: \(111000x\).
\[
111000x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 100x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \text{ We need more elements.}
\]
Case $M_{11}$: $1110000x$.

$$1110000x \rightarrow 100100x \rightarrow 11111x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101x.$$ (5TS)

Case $M_{12}$: $1110001x$.

$$1110001x \rightarrow 1001011x \rightarrow 1111010x \rightarrow 100001x \rightarrow 110001x \rightarrow 101x.$$ (5TS)

Case $M_2$: $111001x$.

$$111001x \rightarrow 100111x \rightarrow 111100x \rightarrow 10001x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x.$$ We need more elements.

Case $M_{21}$: $1110010x$.

$$1110010x \rightarrow 100111x \rightarrow 111100x \rightarrow 10001x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x.$$ We need more elements.

Case $M_{211}$: $11100100x$.

$$11100100x \rightarrow 1001111x \rightarrow 1111000x \rightarrow 100010x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x.$$ We need more elements.

Case $M_{2111}$: $111001000x$.

$$111001000x \rightarrow 10011110x \rightarrow 1111000x \rightarrow 100010x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x.$$ We need more elements.

Case $M_{21111}$: $1110010000x$.

$$1110010000x \rightarrow 100111100x \rightarrow 11110000x \rightarrow 1000101x \rightarrow 11011010x \rightarrow 1001001x \rightarrow 1111111x \rightarrow 1000000x \rightarrow 11000x \rightarrow 10100x.$$ (9TS)*

Case $M_{21112}$: $1110010001x$.

$$1110010001x \rightarrow 100111101x \rightarrow 1111000010x \rightarrow 100010011x \rightarrow 110111110x \rightarrow 10010000x \rightarrow 111100x \rightarrow 100001x \rightarrow 110011x \rightarrow 101110x.$$ (9TS)*

Case $M_{2112}$: $111001001x$.

$$111001001x \rightarrow 100111111x \rightarrow 111100000x \rightarrow 10001000x \rightarrow 110111x \rightarrow 100100x \rightarrow 11111x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 101x.$$ (9TS)*
**Case M**<sub>212</sub>: 1110010<sup>x</sup>.  
1110010<sup>x</sup>→10011101<sup>x</sup>→11110001<sup>x</sup>→10001011<sup>x</sup>→11011010<sup>x</sup>→1001001<sup>x</sup>→1111111<sup>x</sup>→1 000000<sup>x</sup>→110000<sup>x</sup>→10100<sup>x</sup>. (9TS)*

**Case M**<sub>22</sub>: 1110011<sup>x</sup>.  
1110011<sup>x</sup>→1001110<sup>x</sup>→111100<sup>x</sup>→10001<sup>x</sup>→11001<sup>x</sup>→101110<sup>x</sup>. (5TS)

**Case N**: 11101<sup>x</sup>.  
11101<sup>x</sup>→10001<sup>x</sup>→11011<sup>x</sup>→10010<sup>x</sup>→1111<sup>x</sup>→1000<sup>x</sup>→110<sup>x</sup>→10<sup>x</sup>. **We need more elements.**

**Case N**<sub>1</sub>: 111010<sup>x</sup>.  
111010<sup>x</sup>→10001<sup>x</sup>→11011<sup>x</sup>→10010<sup>x</sup>→1111<sup>x</sup>→1000<sup>x</sup>→110<sup>x</sup>→10<sup>x</sup>. **We need more elements.**

**Case N**<sub>11</sub>: 1110100<sup>x</sup>.  
1110100<sup>x</sup>→100011<sup>x</sup>→110110<sup>x</sup>→10010<sup>x</sup>→1111<sup>x</sup>→1000<sup>x</sup>→110<sup>x</sup>→10<sup>x</sup>. **We need more elements.**

**Case N**<sub>111</sub>: 11101000<sup>x</sup>.  
11101000<sup>x</sup>→1000110<sup>x</sup>→110110<sup>x</sup>→10010<sup>x</sup>→1111<sup>x</sup>→1000<sup>x</sup>→110<sup>x</sup>→10<sup>x</sup>. **We need more elements.**

**Case N**<sub>1111</sub>: 111010000<sup>x</sup>.  
111010000<sup>x</sup>→10001100<sup>x</sup>→1101101<sup>x</sup>→1001001<sup>x</sup>→1111111<sup>x</sup>→1000000<sup>x</sup>→110000<sup>x</sup>→1010 0<sup>x</sup>. (7TS)

**Case N**<sub>1112</sub>: 111010001<sup>x</sup>.  
111010001<sup>x</sup>→100011011<sup>x</sup>→110110010<sup>x</sup>→10010111<sup>x</sup>→11110100<sup>x</sup>→1000010<sup>x</sup>→110011<sup>x</sup>→101110<sup>x</sup>. (7TS)

**Case N**<sub>112</sub>: 11101001<sup>x</sup>.  
11101001<sup>x</sup>→100011011<sup>x</sup>→110110010<sup>x</sup>→10010111<sup>x</sup>→11110100<sup>x</sup>→1000010<sup>x</sup>→110011<sup>x</sup>→101110<sup>x</sup>. (7TS)
$11101001x \rightarrow 10001111x \rightarrow 11011000x \rightarrow 1001010x \rightarrow 111101x \rightarrow 100001x \rightarrow 110011x \rightarrow 101110x. \ (7TS)$

**Case N$_{12}$:** $1110101x$.

$1110101x \rightarrow 1000101x \rightarrow 1101101x \rightarrow 1001001x \rightarrow 1111111x \rightarrow 1000000x \rightarrow 110000x \rightarrow 101000x. \ (7TS)$

**Case N$_{2}$:** $111011x$.

$111011x \rightarrow 100010x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \ \text{We need more elements.}$

**Case N$_{21}$:** $1110110x$.

$1110110x \rightarrow 100010x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \ \text{We need more elements.}$

**Case N$_{211}$:** $11101100x$.

$11101100x \rightarrow 1000101x \rightarrow 1101101x \rightarrow 1001001x \rightarrow 1111111x \rightarrow 1000000x \rightarrow 1100000x \rightarrow 101000x. \ \ (7TS)$

**Case N$_{212}$:** $11101101x$.

$11101101x \rightarrow 10001001x \rightarrow 1101111x \rightarrow 1001000x \rightarrow 1111100x \rightarrow 1000000x \rightarrow 11000x \rightarrow 10100x. \ \ (7TS)$

**Case N$_{22}$:** $1110111x$.

$1110111x \rightarrow 1000100x \rightarrow 110111x \rightarrow 100100x \rightarrow 11111x \rightarrow 10000x \rightarrow 1100x \rightarrow 1011x. \ (7TS)$

**Case O:** $11110x$.

$11110x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \ \text{We need more elements.}$

**Case O$_{1}$:** $111100x$.

$111100x \rightarrow 10001x \rightarrow 11011x \rightarrow 10010x \rightarrow 1111x \rightarrow 1000x \rightarrow 110x \rightarrow 10x. \ \text{We need more elements.}$
Case $O_{11}$: $1111000x$.

$1111000x\rightarrow100010x\rightarrow11011x\rightarrow10010x\rightarrow1111x\rightarrow1000x\rightarrow110x\rightarrow10x$. We need more elements.

Case $O_{111}$: $11110000x$.

$11110000x\rightarrow1000100x\rightarrow110111x\rightarrow100100x\rightarrow11111x\rightarrow10000x\rightarrow1100x\rightarrow101x$. (7TS)

Case $O_{112}$: $1111001x$.

$1111001x\rightarrow10001011x\rightarrow11011010x\rightarrow1001001x\rightarrow1111111x\rightarrow1000000x\rightarrow110000x\rightarrow101x$. (7TS)

Case $O_{12}$: $111101x$.

$111101x\rightarrow1000111x\rightarrow1101100x\rightarrow100101x\rightarrow1111101x\rightarrow100001x\rightarrow110011x\rightarrow101110x$. (7TS)

Case $O_2$: $111101x$.

$111101x\rightarrow100001x\rightarrow110011x\rightarrow101110x$. (3TS)

Case $P$: $11111x$.

$11111x\rightarrow10000x\rightarrow1100x\rightarrow101x$. (3TS)

We can see that the maximum number of time-steps to get $101xxx$ is 9. 10 is the minimum number of cells to reach 9 time-steps.
Appendix H

Rule 387410647

In chapter 4, we found that there were only four transition rules which give three-periodic stationary pattern in three states using random initial conditions. In this appendix, we want to see the maximum number of time-steps this transition takes to produce periodic stationary patterns

We have noted that under the transition rule 387410647 periodic pattern forms first on the left and then expand over the chain from the left to the right. Therefore we will consider various initial combinations occurring on the left side of the chain and analyse how they allow the growth of the periodic structure to the right. Let’s consider twenty seven cases starting with the first digit 1 on the left of the structure.

Case A: 1000x.

\[
1000x \rightarrow 1211x \rightarrow 1202x \rightarrow 1201x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]

For Case A, one has initially 1000x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (100) → (120). The next three digits are 000. The 0 in the middle of 000 turns to 1. This is because the configuration says that (000) → (010). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000) → (010), (001) → (011) and (002) → (012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain 1211x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121) → (121). The next three digits are 211. The 1 in the middle of 211 turns to 0 because the configuration says that (211) → (201). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are (110) → (120), (111) → (121) and (112) → (122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120) → (120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202) → (202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are
(020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case B:** 1001x.

\[ 1001x \rightarrow 1211x \rightarrow 1202x \rightarrow 1201x. \quad (3TS)* \]

For **Case B**, one has initially 1001x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (100)→(120). The next three digits are 01x. Three configurations containing 01x are (010)→(010), (011)→(011) and (012)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 1 in the middle of 01x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1211x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 211. The 1 in the middle of 211 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (211)→(211). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain 1201x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 201. The 0 in the middle of 201 remains the same since the configuration says that (201)→(201). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are (110)→(120), (111)→(121) and (112)→(122). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case C:** 1002x.

\[ 1002x \rightarrow 1211x \rightarrow 1202x \rightarrow 1201x. \quad (3TS)* \]

For **Case C**, one has initially 1002x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (100)→(120). The next three digits are 002. The 0 in the middle of 002 turns to 1. This is because the configuration says that (002)→(012). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain 1211x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.
configuration says that \((121)\rightarrow(121)\). The next three digits are 211. The 1 in the middle of 211 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((211)\rightarrow(201)\). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are \((110)\rightarrow(120)\), \((111)\rightarrow(121)\) and \((112)\rightarrow(122)\).

No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are \((020)\rightarrow(010)\), \((021)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((022)\rightarrow(012)\).

No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case D**: 1010x.

\[
1010x\rightarrow1212x\rightarrow1202x\rightarrow1201x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]

For **Case D**, one has initially 1010x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((101)\rightarrow(121)\). The next three digits are 010. The 1 in the middle of 010 remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((010)\rightarrow(010)\). The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are \((100)\rightarrow(120)\), \((101)\rightarrow(121)\) and \((102)\rightarrow(122)\).

No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 10x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1212x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((121)\rightarrow(121)\). The next three digits are 212. The 1 in the middle of 212 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((212)\rightarrow(202)\). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are \((120)\rightarrow(120)\), \((121)\rightarrow(121)\) and \((122)\rightarrow(122)\).

No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that \((202)\rightarrow(202)\). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are \((020)\rightarrow(010)\), \((021)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((022)\rightarrow(012)\).

No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case E**: 1011x.
For Case E, one has initially 1011x. Let's start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (101)→(121). The next three digits are 011. The 1 in the middle of 011 remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (011)→(011). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are (110)→(120), (111)→(121) and (112)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1212x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 212. The 1 in the middle of 212 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (212)→(202). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are (120)→(120), (121)→(121) and (122)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

Case F: 1012x.

For Case F, one has initially 1012x. Let's start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (101)→(121). The next three digits are 012. The 1 in the middle of 012 remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (012)→(012). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are (120)→(120), (121)→(121) and (122)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1212x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 212. The 1 in the middle of 212 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (212)→(202). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are (120)→(120), (121)→(121) and (122)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we
obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case G:** 1020x.

\[1020x\rightarrow1210x\rightarrow1202x\rightarrow1201x\] (3TS)*

For **Case G**, one has initially 1020x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (102)→(122). The next three digits are 020. The 2 in the middle of 020 will change to 1. This is because the configuration says that (020)→(010). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 20x are (200)→(200), (201)→(201) and (202)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 20x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1210x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 210. The 1 in the middle of 210 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (210)→(200). The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are (100)→(120), (101)→(121) and (102)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 10x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case H:** 1021x.

\[1021x\rightarrow1210x\rightarrow1202x\rightarrow1201x\] (3TS)*

For **Case H**, one has initially 1021x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (102)→(122). The next three digits are 021. The 2 in the middle of 021 will change to 1. This is because the configuration says that (021)→(011). The next three digits are 21x. Three configurations
containing $21x$ are $(210)\rightarrow(200)$, $(211)\rightarrow(201)$ and $(212)\rightarrow(202)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 1 in the middle of $21x$ will change to 0. Thus, we obtain $1210x$. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that $(121)\rightarrow(121)$. The next three digits are 210. The 1 in the middle of 210 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that $(210)\rightarrow(200)$. The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are $(100)\rightarrow(120)$, $(101)\rightarrow(121)$ and $(102)\rightarrow(122)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 0 in the middle of 10x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain $1202x$. We need one more procedure in order to reach $1201x$. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that $(120)\rightarrow(120)$ The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that $(202)\rightarrow(202)$. The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are $(020)\rightarrow(010)$, $(021)\rightarrow(011)$ and $(022)\rightarrow(012)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe $1201$. 

**Case I:** $1022x$.

$$1022x\rightarrow1210x\rightarrow1202x\rightarrow1201x. \ (3TS)^*$$

For **Case I**, one has initially $1022x$. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 0, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that $(102)\rightarrow(122)$. The next three digits are 022. The 2 in the middle of 022 will change to 1. This is because the configuration says that $(022)\rightarrow(012)$. The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are $(220)\rightarrow(200)$, $(221)\rightarrow(201)$ and $(222)\rightarrow(202)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 22x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain $1210x$. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that $(121)\rightarrow(121)$. The next three digits are 210. The 1 in the middle of 210 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that $(210)\rightarrow(200)$. The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are $(100)\rightarrow(120)$, $(101)\rightarrow(121)$ and $(102)\rightarrow(122)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 0 in the middle of 10x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain $1202x$. We need one more procedure in order to reach $1201x$. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that $(120)\rightarrow(120)$. The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that $(202)\rightarrow(202)$. The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are $(020)\rightarrow(010)$, $(021)\rightarrow(011)$ and $(022)\rightarrow(012)$. No matter what the value of $x$ will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe $1201$.  

169
Case J: 1100x.

\[1100x \rightarrow 1221x \rightarrow 1200x \rightarrow \mathbf{1201x}. (3TS)\] *

For Case J, one has initially 1100x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (110)→(120). The next three digits are 100. The 0 in the middle of 100 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that (100)→(120). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain 1221x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 221. The 2 in the middle of 221 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (221)→(201). The next three digits are 21x. Three configurations containing 21x are (210)→(200), (211)→(201) and (212)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 21x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach \(\mathbf{1201x}\). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \(\mathbf{1201}\).

Case K: 1101x.

\[1101x \rightarrow 1221x \rightarrow 1200x \rightarrow \mathbf{1201x}. (3TS)\] *

For Case K, one has initially 1101x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (110)→(120). The next three digits are 101. The 0 in the middle of 101 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that (101)→(121). The next three digits are 01x. Three configurations containing 01x are (010)→(010), (011)→(011) and (012)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 01x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1221x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 221. The 2 in the middle of 221 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (221)→(201). The next three digits are 21x. Three configurations containing 21x are (210)→(200), (211)→(201) and (212)→(202).
No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 1 in the middle of \( 21x \) will change to 0. Thus, we obtain \( 1200x \). We need one more procedure in order to reach \( 1201x \). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010)\), \((001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \( 1201 \).

**Case L:** \( 1102x \).

\[
1102x \rightarrow 1221x \rightarrow 1200x \rightarrow 1201x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]

For **Case L**, one has initially \( 1102x \). Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((110)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 102. The 0 in the middle of 102 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((102)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are \((020)\rightarrow(010)\), \((021)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((022)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain 1221x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((122)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 221. The 2 in the middle of 221 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((221)\rightarrow(201)\). The next three digits are 21x. Three configurations containing 21x are \((210)\rightarrow(200)\), \((211)\rightarrow(201)\) and \((212)\rightarrow(202)\). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 1 in the middle of 21x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain \( 1200x \). We need one more procedure in order to reach \( 1201x \). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010)\), \((001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \( 1201 \).

**Case M:** \( 1110x \).

\[
1110x \rightarrow 1222x \rightarrow 1200x \rightarrow 1201x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]
For **Case M**, one has initially 1110x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (111)→(121). The next three digits are 110. The 1 in the middle of 110 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that (110)→(120). The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are (100)→(120), (101)→(121) and (102)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 10x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1222x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 222. The 2 in the middle of 222 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (222)→(202). The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are (220)→(200), (221)→(201) and (222)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 22x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case N:** 1111x.

\[1111x \rightarrow 1222x \rightarrow 1200x \rightarrow 1201x. \text{(3TS)}*\]

For **Case N**, one has initially 1111x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (111)→(121). The next three digits are 111. The 1 in the middle of 111 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that (111)→(121). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are (110)→(120), (111)→(121) and (112)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1222x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 222. The 2 in the middle of 222 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (222)→(202). The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are (220)→(200), (221)→(201) and (222)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 22x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed.
The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010), (001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \(1201\).

**Case O:** 1112x.

\[
1112x\rightarrow1222x\rightarrow1200x\rightarrow\mathbf{1201}x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]

For **Case O**, one has initially 1112x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((111)\rightarrow(121)\). The next three digits are 112. The 1 in the middle of 112 will change to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((112)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are \((120)\rightarrow(120), (121)\rightarrow(121)\) and \((122)\rightarrow(122)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1222x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((122)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 222. The 2 in the middle of 222 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((222)\rightarrow(202)\). The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are \((220)\rightarrow(200), (221)\rightarrow(201)\) and \((222)\rightarrow(202)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of 22x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach \(\mathbf{1201}x\). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010), (001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \(1201\).

**Case P:** 1120x.

\[
1120x\rightarrow1220x\rightarrow1200x\rightarrow\mathbf{1201}x. \quad (3TS)^* 
\]

For **Case P**, one has initially 1120x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that \((112)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 120. The 2 in the middle of 120 will remain as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations
containing 20x are (200)→(200), (201)→(201) and (202)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 20x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1220x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 220. The 2 in the middle of 220 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (220)→(200). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 20x are (200)→(200), (201)→(201) and (202)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 20x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

Case Q: 1121x.

1121x→1220x→1200x→1201x. (3TS)*

For Case Q, one has initially 1121x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (112)→(122). The next three digits are 121. The 2 in the middle of 121 will remain as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 21x are (210)→(200), (211)→(201) and (212)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 21x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1220x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 220. The 2 in the middle of 220 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (220)→(200). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 20x are (200)→(200), (201)→(201) and (202)→(202). No matter what the value of x will be, the 0 in the middle of 20x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are
(000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00\( x \) will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \( 1201 \).

**Case R:** 1122x.

\[
\begin{align*}
1122x & \rightarrow 1220x \\
1220x & \rightarrow 1200x \\
1200x & \rightarrow 1201x.
\end{align*}
\]

For **Case R**, one has initially 1122x. Let’s start with the first three digits. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 1, turns to 2. This is because the configuration says that (112)→(122). The next three digits are 122. 2 in the middle of 122 will remain as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are (220)→(200), (221)→(201) and (222)→(202). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 20\( x \) will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1220x. We start over again. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 220. The 2 in the middle of 220 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (220)→(200). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 20x are (200)→(200), (201)→(201) and (202)→(202). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 20\( x \) will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach \( 1201x \). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00\( x \) will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \( 1201 \).

**Case S:** 1200x.

\[
\begin{align*}
1200x & \rightarrow 1201x.
\end{align*}
\]

For **Case S**, one has initially 1200x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that (200)→(200). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are (000)→(010), (001)→(011) and (002)→(012). No matter what the value of \( x \) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00\( x \) will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \( 1201 \).
Case T: 1201x.

1201x. (0TS)

For Case T, the pattern 1201x is already established.

Case U: 1200x.

1202x→1201x. (1TS)

For Case U, one has initially 1202x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

Case V: 1210x.

1210x→1202x→1201x. (2TS)

For Case V, one has initially 1210x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 210. The 1 in the middle of 210 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (210)→(200). The next three digits are 10x. Three configurations containing 10x are (100)→(120), (101)→(121) and (102)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 10x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

Case W: 1211x.

1211x→1202x→1201x. (2TS)
For **Case W**, one has initially 1211x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 211. The 1 in the middle of 211 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (211)→(202). The next three digits are 11x. Three configurations containing 11x are (110)→(120), (111)→(121) and (112)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 1 in the middle of 11x will change to 2. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case X:** 1212x.

\[
1212x\rightarrow1202x\rightarrow1201x. \quad (2TS)
\]

For **Case X**, one has initially 1212x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (121)→(121). The next three digits are 212. The 1 in the middle of 212 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that (212)→(202). The next three digits are 12x. Three configurations containing 12x are (120)→(120), (121)→(121) and (122)→(122). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 12x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1202x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that (120)→(120). The next three digits are 202. The 0 in the middle of 202 remains the same since the configuration says that (202)→(202). The next three digits are 02x. Three configurations containing 02x are (020)→(010), (021)→(011) and (022)→(012). No matter what the value of x will be, the 2 in the middle of 02x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case Y:** 1220x.

\[
1220x\rightarrow1200x\rightarrow1201x. \quad (2TS)
\]

For **Case Y**, one has initially 1220x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that (122)→(122). The next three digits are 220. The 2
in the middle of 220 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((220)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 20x. Three configurations containing 20x are \((200)\rightarrow(200), (201)\rightarrow(201)\) and \((202)\rightarrow(202)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 20x will remain as it is. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010), (001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case Z:** 1221x.

\[
1221x\rightarrow1200x\rightarrow1201x. \quad (2TS)
\]

For **Case Z**, one has initially 1221x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((122)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 221. The 2 in the middle of 221 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((221)\rightarrow(201)\). The next three digits are 21x. Three configurations containing 21x are \((210)\rightarrow(200), (211)\rightarrow(201)\) and \((212)\rightarrow(202)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 1 in the middle of 21x will change to 0. Thus, we obtain 1200x. We need one more procedure in order to reach 1201x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00x. Three configurations containing 00x are \((000)\rightarrow(010), (001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00x will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe 1201.

**Case AA:** 1222x.

\[
1222x\rightarrow1200x\rightarrow1201x. \quad (2TS)
\]

For **Case AA**, one has initially 1222x. The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains as it is. This is because the configuration says that \((122)\rightarrow(122)\). The next three digits are 222. The 2 in the middle of 222 turns to 0. Because the configuration says that \((222)\rightarrow(202)\). The next three digits are 22x. Three configurations containing 22x are \((220)\rightarrow(200), (221)\rightarrow(201)\)
and \((222)\rightarrow(202)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 2 in the middle of \(22x\) will change to 0. Thus, we obtain \(1200x\). We need one more procedure in order to reach \(1201x\). The first digit is fixed. The next digit, 2, remains the same because the configuration says that \((120)\rightarrow(120)\). The next three digits are 200. The 0 in the middle of 200 remains the same since the configuration says that \((200)\rightarrow(200)\). The next three digits are 00\(x\). Three configurations containing 00\(x\) are \((000)\rightarrow(010)\), \((001)\rightarrow(011)\) and \((002)\rightarrow(012)\). No matter what the value of \(x\) will be, the 0 in the middle of 00\(x\) will change to 1. Thus, we obtain the stripe \(1201\).

Thus the slowest way of formation of periodic structure implies the formation of one stripe during 3 time steps therefore in the medium containing \(k\) elements periodic structure (containing \(k/3\) stripes) forms during \(k\) iterations. For other cases when starting from 0\(xxx\) and 2\(xxx\), the procedures will be similar in order to reach \(0120x\) and \(2012x\) respectively.
Bibliography


